

The BABAR Collaboration

1
2 B. Aubert, A. Bazan, A. Boucham, D. Boutigny, I. De Bonis, J. Favier, J.-M. Gaillard, A. Jeremie,
3 Y. Karyotakis, T. Le Flour, J. P. Lees, S. Lieunard, P. Petitpas, P. Robbe, V. Tisserand, K. Zachariadou
4 *Laboratoire de Physique des Particules, F-74941 Annecy-le-Vieux, CEDEX, France*

5 A. Palano

6 *Università di Bari, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-70126 Bari, Italy*

7 G. P. Chen, J. C. Chen, N. D. Qi, G. Rong, P. Wang, Y. S. Zhu

8 *Institute of High Energy Physics, Beijing 100039, China*

9 G. Eigen, P. L. Reinertsen, B. Stugu

10 *University of Bergen, N-5007 Bergen, Norway*

11 B. Abbott, G. S. Abrams, L. Amerman, A. W. Borgland, A. B. Breon, D. N. Brown, J. Button-Shafer,
12 A. R. Clark, S. Dardin, C. Day, S. F. Dow, Q. Fan, I. Gaponenko, M. S. Gill, F. R. Goozen, S. J. Gowdy,
13 Y. Groyzman, C. Hernikl, R. G. Jacobsen, R. C. Jared, R. W. Kadel, J. Kadyk, A. Karcher, L. T. Kerth,
14 I. Kipnis, S. Kluth, J. F. Kral, R. Lafever, C. LeClerc, M. E. Levi, S. A. Lewis, C. Lionberger, T. Liu, M. Long,
15 L. Luo, G. Lynch, P. Luft, E. Mandelli, M. Marino, K. Marks, C. Matuk, A. B. Meyer, R. Minor, A. Mokhtarani,
16 M. Momayezi, M. Nyman, P. J. Oddone, J. Ohnemus, D. Oshatz, S. Patton, M. Pedrali-Noy, A. Perazzo,
17 C. Peters, W. Pope, M. Pripstein, D. R. Quarrie, J. E. Rasson, N. A. Roe, A. Romosan, M. T. Ronan,
18 V. G. Shelkov, R. Stone, P. D. Strotter,¹ A. V. Telnov, H. von der Lippe, T. F. Weber, W. A. Wenzel, G. Zizka
19 *Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory and University of California, Berkeley, CA 94720, USA*

20 P. G. Bright-Thomas, C. M. Hawkes, A. Kirk, D. J. Knowles, S. W. O'Neale, A. T. Watson, N. K. Watson

21 *University of Birmingham, Birmingham, B15 2TT, UK*

22 T. Deppermann, H. Koch, J. Krug, M. Kunze, B. Lewandowski, K. Peters, H. Schmuecker, M. Steinke

23 *Ruhr Universität Bochum, Inst. f. Experimentalphysik 1, D-44780 Bochum, Germany*

24 J. C. Andress, N. R. Barlow, W. Bhimji, N. Chevalier, P. J. Clark, W. N. Cottingham, N. De Groot, N. Dyce,
25 B. Foster, A. Mass, J. D. McFall, D. Wallom, F. F. Wilson

26 *University of Bristol, Bristol BS8 1TH, UK*

27 K. Abe, C. Hearty, J. A. McKenna, D. Thiessen

28 *University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada V6T 1Z1*

29 B. Camanzi, T. J. Harrison,² A. K. McKemey, J. Tinslay

30 *Brunel University, Uxbridge, Middlesex UB8 3PH, UK*

31 E. I. Antohin, V. E. Blinov, A. D. Bukin, D. A. Bukin, A. R. Buzykaev, M. S. Dubrovin, V. B. Golubev,
32 V. N. Ivanchenko, G. M. Kolachev, A. A. Korol, E. A. Kravchenko, S. F. Mikhailov, A. P. Onuchin,
33 A. A. Salmikov, S. I. Serednyakov, Yu. I. Skovpen, V. I. Telnov, A. N. Yushkov

34 *Budker Institute of Nuclear Physics, Novosibirsk 630090, Russia*

35 J. Booth, A. J. Lankford, M. Mandelkern, S. Pier, D. P. Stoker

36 *University of California at Irvine, Irvine, CA 92697, USA*

¹Now at Queen Mary, University of London, London, E1 4NS, UK

²Now at University of Birmingham, Birmingham, B15 2TT, UK

37

A. Ahsan, K. Arisaka, C. Buchanan, S. Chun

38

University of California at Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA 90024, USA

39

J. G. Branson, R. Faccini,³ D. B. MacFarlane, S. A. Prell, Sh. Rahatlou, G. Raven, V. Sharma

40

University of California at San Diego, La Jolla, CA 92093, USA

41

S. Burke, D. Callahan, C. Campagnari, B. Dahmes, D. Hale, P. A. Hart, N. Kuznetsova, S. Kyre, S. L. Levy,
O. Long, A. Lu, J. May, J. D. Richman, W. Verkerke, M. Witherell, S. Yellin

42

43

University of California at Santa Barbara, Santa Barbara, CA 93106, USA

44

J. Beringer, J. DeWitt, D. E. Dorfan, A. M. Eisner, A. Frey, A. A. Grillo, M. Grothe, C. A. Heusch,
R. P. Johnson, W. Kroeger, W. S. Lockman, T. Pulliam, W. Rowe, H. Sadrozinski, T. Schalk, R. E. Schmitz,
B. A. Schumm, A. Seiden, E. N. Spencer, M. Turri, W. Walkowiak, M. Wilder, D. C. Williams

45

46

University of California at Santa Cruz, Santa Cruz, CA 95064, USA

47

48

E. Chen, G. P. Dubois-Felsmann, A. Dvoretzkii, J. E. Hanson, D. G. Hitlin, Yu. G. Kolomensky,⁴ S. Metzler,
J. Oyang, F. C. Porter, A. Ryd, A. Samuel, M. Weaver, S. Yang, R. Y. Zhu

49

50

California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, CA 91125, USA

51

S. Devmal, T. L. Geld, S. Jayatilleke, S. M. Jayatilleke, G. Mancinelli, B. T. Meadows, M. D. Sokoloff

52

University of Cincinnati, Cincinnati, OH 45221, USA

53

P. Bloom, B. Broomer, E. Erdos, S. Fahey, W. T. Ford, F. Gaede, W. C. van Hoek, D. R. Johnson,
A. K. Michael, U. Nauenberg, A. Olivas, H. Park, P. Rankin, J. Roy, S. Sen, J. G. Smith, D. L. Wagner

54

55

University of Colorado, Boulder, CO 80309, USA

56

J. Blouw, J. L. Harton, M. Krishnamurthy, A. Soffer, W. H. Toki, D. W. Warner, R. J. Wilson, J. Zhang

57

Colorado State University, Fort Collins, CO 80523, USA

58

T. Brandt, J. Brose, G. Dahlinger, M. Dickopp, R. S. Dubitzky, P. Eckstein, H. Fatterschneider, M. L. Kocian,
R. Krause, R. Müller-Pfefferkorn, K. R. Schubert, R. Schwierz, B. Spaan, L. Wilden

59

60

Technische Universität Dresden, D-01062 Dresden, Germany

61

L. Behr, D. Bernard, G. R. Bonneaud, F. Brochard, J. Cohen-Tanugi, S. Ferrag, G. Fouque, F. Gastaldi,
P. Matricon, P. Mora de Freitas, C. Renard, E. Roussot, S. T'Jampens, C. Thiebaut, G. Vasileiadis, M. Verderi

62

63

Ecole Polytechnique, F-91128 Palaiseau, France

64

A. Anjomshooa, R. Bernet, F. Di Lodovico, F. Muheim, S. Playfer, J. E. Swain

65

University of Edinburgh, Edinburgh EH9 3JZ, UK

66

M. Falbo

67

Elon College, Elon College, NC 27244

68

C. Bozzi, S. Dittongo, M. Folegani, L. Piemontese, A. .C. Ramusino

69

*Università di Ferrara, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-44100 Ferrara, Italy*³Jointly appointed with Università di Roma La Sapienza, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-00185 Roma, Italy⁴Now at LBNL and University of California, Berkeley, CA 94720, USA

E. Treadwell

Florida A&M University, Tallahassee, FL 32307, USA

F. Anulli,⁵ R. Baldini-Ferroli, A. Calcaterra, R. de Sangro, D. Falciai, G. Finocchiaro, P. Patteri, I. M. Peruzzi,⁵
M. Piccolo, Y. Xie, A. Zallo

Laboratori Nazionali di Frascati dell'INFN, I-00044 Frascati, Italy

S. Bagnasco, A. Buzzo, R. Contri, G. Crosetti, P. Fabbriatore, S. Farinon, M. Lo Vetere, M. Macri, S. Minutoli,
M. R. Monge, R. Musenich, M. Pallavicini, R. Parodi, S. Passaggio, F. C. Pastore, C. Patrignani, M. G. Pia,
C. Priano, E. Robutti, A. Santroni

Università di Genova, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-16146 Genova, Italy

R. Bartoldus, T. Dignan, R. Hamilton, U. Mallik

University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA 52242, USA

J. Cochran, H. B. Crawley, P.-A. Fischer, J. Lamsa, R. McKay, W. T. Meyer, E. I. Rosenberg

Iowa State University, Ames, IA 50011-3160, USA

J. N. Albert, C. Beigbeder, M. Benkebil, D. Breton, R. Cizeron, S. Du, G. Grosdidier, C. Hast, A. Höcker,
V. LePeltier, A. M. Lutz, S. Plaszczynski, M. H. Schune, S. Trincaz-Duvoid, K. Truong, A. Valassi, G. Wormser

Laboratoire de l'Accélérateur Linéaire, F-91898 Orsay Cedex, France

O. Alford, D. Behne, R. M. Bionta, J. Bowman, V. Brigljević, A. Brooks, V. A. Dacosta, O. Fackler, D. Fujino,
M. Harper, D. J. Lange, M. Mugge, T. G. O'Connor, H. Olson, L. Ott, E. Parker, B. Pedrotti, M. Roeben,
X. Shi, K. van Bibber, T. J. Wenaus, D. M. Wright, C. R. Wuest, B. Yamamoto

Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, Livermore, CA 94550, USA

M. Carroll, P. Cooke, J. R. Fry, E. Gabathuler, R. Gamet, M. George, M. Kay, S. McMahon,⁶ A. Muir,
D. J. Payne, R. J. Sloane, P. Sutcliffe, C. Touramanis, G. Zioulas

University of Liverpool, Liverpool L69 3BX, UK

M. L. Aspinwall, D. A. Bowerman, P. D. Dauncey, I. Eschrich, N. J. W. Gunawardane, R. Martin, J. A. Nash,
D. R. Price, P. Sanders, D. Smith

University of London, Imperial College, London, SW7 2BW, UK

D. E. Azzopardi, J. J. Back, P. Dixon, P. F. Harrison, D. Newman-Coburn,⁷ R. J. L. Potter, H. W. Shorthouse,
M. I. Williams, P. B. Vidal

Queen Mary, University of London, London, E1 4NS, UK

G. Cowan, S. George, M. G. Green, A. Kurup, C. E. Marker, P. McGrath, T. R. McMahon, F. Salvatore,
I. Scott, G. Vaitsas

University of London, Royal Holloway and Bedford New College, Egham, Surrey TW20 0EX, UK

D. Brown, C. L. Davis, Y. Li, J. Pavlovich

University of Louisville, Louisville, KY 40292, USA

⁵Jointly appointed with Univ. di Perugia, I-06100 Perugia, Italy

⁶Now at University of California at Irvine, Irvine, CA 92697, USA

⁷Deceased

- 104 J. Allison, R. J. Barlow, J. T. Boyd, J. Fullwood, F. Jackson, A. Khan,⁸ G. D. Lafferty, N. Savvas,
 105 E. T. Simopoulos, R. J. Thompson, J. H. Weatherall
 106 *University of Manchester, Manchester M13 9PL, UK*
- 107 R. Bard, C. Dallapiccola,⁹ A. Farbin, A. Jawahery, V. Lillard, J. Olsen, D. A. Roberts, J. R. Schieck
 108 *University of Maryland, College Park, MD 20742, USA*
- 109 G. Blaylock, K. T. Flood, S. S. Hertzbach, R. Kofler, C. S. Lin, S. Willocq, J. Wittlin
 110 *University of Massachusetts, Amherst, MA 01003, USA*
- 111 B. Brau, R. Cowan, F. Taylor, R. K. Yamamoto
 112 *Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA*
- 113 D. I. Britton, R. Fernholz,¹⁰ M. Houde, M. Milek, P. M. Patel, J. Trischuk
 114 *McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada H3A 2T8*
- 115 F. Lanni, F. Palombo
 116 *Università di Milano, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-20133 Milano, Italy*
- 117 J. M. Bauer, M. Booke, L. Cremaldi, R. Kroeger, M. Reep, J. Reidy, D. A. Sanders, D. J. Summers
 118 *University of Mississippi, University, MS 38677, USA*
- 119 J. F. Arguin, M. Beaulieu, J. P. Martin, J. Y. Nief, R. Seitz, P. Taras, A. Woch, V. Zacek
 120 *Université de Montreal, Montreal, QC, Canada, H3C 3J7*
- 121 H. Nicholson, C. S. Sutton
 122 *Mount Holyoke College, South Hadley, MA 01075, USA*
- 123 N. Cavallo, G. De Nardo, F. Fabozzi, C. Gatto, L. Lista, D. Piccolo, C. Sciacca
 124 *Università di Napoli Federico II, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-80126 Napoli, Italy*
- 125 N. M. Cason, J. M. LoSecco
 126 *University of Notre Dame, Notre Dame, IN 46556, USA*
- 127 J. R. G. Alsmiller, T. A. Gabriel, T. Handler, J. Heck
 128 *Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, TN 37831, USA*
- 129 M. Iwasaki, N. B. Sinev,
 130 *University of Oregon, Eugene, OR 97403, USA*
- 131 R. Caracciolo, F. Colecchia, F. Dal Corso, F. Galeazzi, M. Marzolla, G. Michelon, M. Morandin, M. Posocco,
 132 M. Rotondo, S. Santi, F. Simonetto, R. Stroili, E. Torassa, C. Voci
 133 *Università di Padova, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-35131 Padova, Italy*

⁸Now at University of Edinburgh, Edinburgh EH9 3JZ, UK

⁹Now at University of Massachusetts, Amherst, MA 01003, USA

¹⁰Now at Princeton University, Princeton, NJ 08544, USA

134 P. Bailly, M. Benayoun, H. Briand, J. Chauveau, P. David, C. De la Vaissière, L. Del Buono, J.-F. Genat,
 135 O. Hamon, Ph. Leruste, F. Le Diberder, H. Lebbolo, J. Lory, L. Martin, F. Martinez-Vidal,¹¹ L. Roos, J. Stark,
 136 S. Versillé, B. Zhang

137 *Université Paris VI et VII, F-75252 Paris, Cedex 05, France*

138 P. F. Manfredi, L. Ratti, V. Re, V. Speziali

139 *Università di Pavia, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-27100 Pavia, Italy*

140 E. D. Frank, L. Gladney, Q. H. Guo, J. H. Panetta

141 *University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA 19104, USA*

142 C. Angelini, G. Batignani, S. Bettarini, M. Bondioli, F. Bosi, M. Carpinelli, F. Forti, D. Gagliardi, M. A. Giorgi,
 143 A. Lusiani, P. Mammini, M. Morganti, F. Morsani, N. Neri, A. Profeti, E. Paoloni, M. Rama, G. Rizzo,
 144 F. Sandrelli, G. Simi, G. Triggiani

145 *Università di Pisa, Scuola Normale Superiore, and INFN, I-56010 Pisa, Italy*

146 M. Haire, D. Judd, K. Paick, L. Turnbull, D. E. Wagoner

147 *Prairie View A&M University, Prairie View, TX 77446, USA*

148 J. Albert, C. Bula, M. H. Kelsey, C. Lu, K. T. McDonald, V. Miftakov, B. Sands, S. F. Schaffner,
 149 A. J. S. Smith, A. Tumanov, E. W. Varnes

150 *Princeton University, Princeton, NJ 08544, USA*

151 F. Bronzini, A. Buccheri, C. Bulfon, G. Cavoto, D. del Re, F. Ferrarotto, F. Ferroni, K. Fratini, E. Lamanna,
 152 E. Leonardi, M. A. Mazzoni, S. Morganti, G. Piredda, F. Safai Tehrani, M. Serra, C. Voena

153 *Università di Roma La Sapienza, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-00185 Roma, Italy*

154 R. Waldi

155 *Universität Rostock, D-18051 Rostock, Germany*

156 P. F. Jacques, M. Kalelkar, R. J. Plano

157 *Rutgers University, New Brunswick, NJ 08903, USA*

158 T. Adye, B. Claxton, J. Dowdell, U. Egede, B. Franek, S. Galagedera, N. I. Geddes, G. P. Gopal, J. Kay,¹²
 159 J. Lidbury, S. Madani, S. Metcalfe,^{12,13} G. Markey,¹² P. Olley, M. Watt, S. M. Xella

160 *Rutherford Appleton Laboratory, Didcot, Oxon., OX11 0QX, UK*

161 R. Aleksan, P. Besson,⁷ P. Bourgeois, P. Convert, G. De Domenico, A. de Lesquen, S. Emery, A. Gaidot,
 162 S. F. Ganzhur, Z. Georgette, L. Gosset, P. Graffin, G. Hamel de Monchenault, S. Hervé, M. Karolak,
 163 W. Kozanecki, M. Langer, G. W. London, V. Marques, B. Mayer, P. Micout, J. P. Mols, J. P. Mouly,
 164 Y. Penichot, J. Rolquin, B. Serfass, J. C. Toussaint, M. Usseglio, G. Vasseur, C. Yeche, M. Zito

165 *DAPNIA, Commissariat à l'Énergie Atomique/Saclay, F-91191 Gif-sur-Yvette, France*

166 N. Coptý, M. V. Purohit, F. X. Yumiceva

167 *University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC 29208, USA*

¹¹Now at Università di Pisa, I-56010 Pisa, Italy

¹²At CLRC Daresbury Laboratory, Daresbury, Warrington, Cheshire, WA4 4AD, UK

¹³Now at Stanford Linear Accelerator Center, Stanford, CA 94309, USA

168 I. Adam, A. Adesanya, P. L. Anthony, D. Aston, J. Bartelt, J. Becla, R. Bell, E. Bloom, C. T. Boeheim,
 169 A. M. Boyarski, R. F. Boyce, D. Briggs, F. Bulos, W. Burgess, B. Byers, G. Calderini, R. Chestnut, R. Claus,
 170 M. R. Convery, R. Coombes, L. Cottrell, D. P. Coupal, D. H. Coward, W. W. Craddock, S. DeBarger,
 171 H. DeStaebler, J. Dorfan, M. Doser, W. Dunwoodie, J. E. Dusatko, S. Ecklund, T. H. Fieguth, D. R. Freytag,
 172 T. Glanzman, G. L. Godfrey, G. Haller, A. Hanushevsky, J. Harris, A. Hasan, C. Hee, T. Himel, M. E. Huffer,
 173 T. Hung, W. R. Innes, C. P. Jessop, H. Kawahara, L. Keller, M. E. King, L. Klaisner, H. J. Krebs,
 174 U. Langenegger, W. Langeveld, D. W. G. S. Leith, S. K. Louie, S. Luitz, V. Luth, H. L. Lynch, J. McDonald,
 175 G. Manzin, H. Marsiske, T. Mattison,¹⁴ M. McCulloch, M. McDougald, D. McShurley, S. Menke, R. Messner,
 176 S. Metcalfe, M. Morii,¹⁵ R. Mount, D. R. Muller, D. Nelson, M. Norby, C. P. O'Grady, L. Olavson, J. Olsen,
 177 F. G. O'Neill, G. Oxoby, P. Paolucci,¹⁶ T. Pavel, J. Perl, M. Pertsova, S. Petrak, G. Putallaz, P. E. Raines,
 178 B. N. Ratcliff, R. Reif, S. H. Robertson, L. S. Rochester, A. Roodman, J. J. Russel, L. Sapozhnikov,
 179 O. H. Saxton, T. Schietinger, R. H. Schindler, J. Schwiening, G. Sciolla,¹⁷ J. T. Seeman, V. V. Serbo, S. Shapiro,
 180 K. Skarpass Sr., A. Snyder, E. Soderstrom, A. Soha, S. M. Spanier, A. Stahl, P. Stiles, D. Su, M. K. Sullivan,
 181 M. Talby, H. A. Tanaka, J. Va'vra, S. R. Wagner, R. Wang, T. Weber, A. J. R. Weinstein, J. L. White,
 182 U. Wienands, W. J. Wisniewski, C. C. Young, N. Yu

183 *Stanford Linear Accelerator Center, Stanford, CA 94309, USA*

184 P. R. Burchat, C. H. Cheng, D. Kirkby, T. I. Meyer, C. Roat

185 *Stanford University, Stanford, CA 94305-4060, USA*

186 R. Henderson, N. Khan

187 *TRIUMF, Vancouver, BC, Canada V6T 2A3*

188 S. Berridge, W. Bugg, H. Cohn, E. Hart, A. W. Weidemann

189 *University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN 37996, USA*

190 T. Benninger, J. M. Izen, I. Kitayama, X. C. Lou, M. Turcotte

191 *University of Texas at Dallas, Richardson, TX 75083, USA*

192 F. Bianchi, M. Bona, F. Daudo, B. Di Girolamo, D. Gamba, P. Grosso, A. Smol, P. .P. Trapani, D. Zanin

193 *Università di Torino, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-10125 Torino, Italy*

194 L. Bosisio, G. Della Ricca, L. Lanceri, A. Pompili, P. Poropat, M. Prest, E. Vallazza, G. Vuagnin

195 *Università di Trieste, Dipartimento di Fisica and INFN, I-34127 Trieste, Italy*

196 R. S. Panvini

197 *Vanderbilt University, Nashville, TN 37235, USA*

198 A. De Silva,¹⁸ R. Kowalewski, J. M. Roney

199 *University of Victoria, Victoria, BC, Canada V8W 3P6*

200 H. R. Band, E. Charles, S. Dasu, P. Elmer, J. R. Johnson, J. Nielsen, W. Orejudos, Y. Pan, R. Prepost,

201 I. J. Scott, J. Walsh,¹¹ S. L. Wu, Z. Yu, H. Zobernig

202 *University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI 53706, USA*

¹⁴Now at University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada V6T 1Z1

¹⁵Now at Harvard University, Cambridge, MA 02138

¹⁶Now at Università di Napoli Federico II, I-80126 Napoli, Italy

¹⁷Now at Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA

¹⁸Now at TRIUMF, Vancouver, BC, Canada V6T 2A3

February 6, 2001 – 10:40

DRAFT

7

203

T. B. Moore, H. Neal

204

Yale University, New Haven, CT 06511, USA

The *BABAR* Detector

BABAR is the detector for the SLAC PEP-II asymmetric e^+e^- B Factory operating at the $\Upsilon(4S)$ resonance. *BABAR* was designed to perform comprehensive studies of CP-violation in B-meson decays. The *BABAR* detector has many subsystems configured around a beryllium beam pipe. Charged particle tracks are measured in a multi-layer silicon vertex tracker surrounded by a cylindrical wire drift chamber. Electromagnetic showers from electrons and photons are detected in an array of *CsI* crystals located just inside the solenoidal coil of a superconducting magnet. Muons and neutral hadrons are identified by arrays of resistive plate chambers inserted into gaps in the iron flux return of the magnet. Charged hadrons are identified by dE/dx measurements in the tracking detectors and in a quartz ring-imaging Cherenkov detector surrounding the drift chamber. The trigger, data acquisition and data-monitoring systems are VME- and network-based, and controlled and operated by custom-designed on-line software. Details of the design and layout of the detector components and their associated electronics and software are presented together with performance data.

1. Introduction

The primary physics goal of the *BABAR* experiment is the systematic study of CP-violating asymmetries in the decay of neutral *B* mesons to CP eigenstates. Such measurements are designed to test the Standard Model prediction for CP-violation based on the Cabibbo-Kobayashi-Maskawa mechanism [1]; but many other decay modes of the *B* mesons, charged and neutral, permit searches for this and other sources of CP-violation. The secondary goal is to perform precision measurements of decays of bottom and charm mesons and τ leptons, and to search for rare processes that become accessible with the high luminosity of the PEP-II *B* Factory [2]. The design of the detector is optimized for CP studies, but it is also well suited for these other physics studies. The scientific goals of the *BABAR* experiment were first presented in the Letter of Intent [3]; detailed physics studies have been documented in the *BABAR* Physics Book [4] and earlier workshops [5].

The PEP-II *B* Factory is an asymmetric e^+e^- collider designed to operate at a luminosity of $3 \times 10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ and beyond at a center-of-mass energy of 10.58 GeV, the mass of the $\Upsilon(4S)$ resonance. This resonance decays exclusively to $B^0\bar{B}^0$ and B^+B^- pairs and thus provides an ideal laboratory for the study of *B* mesons. In PEP-II, the electron beam of 8.98 GeV collides head-on

with the positron beam of 3.12 GeV resulting in a boost to the $\Upsilon(4S)$ resonance of $\beta\gamma = 0.55$. This boost makes it possible to reconstruct the decay vertices of the two *B* mesons and to determine their relative decay times. One can therefore measure the time dependence of decay rates. The crucial test of CP invariance is a comparison of these rates for B^0 and \bar{B}^0 to a CP eigenstate. Experimentally, this requires events in which one *B* meson decays to a CP eigenstate and is fully reconstructed and the other *B* meson is tagged as B^0 or a \bar{B}^0 by its decay products: a charged lepton, a charged kaon, or a D^* decay.

The very small branching ratios of *B* mesons to CP modes, typically 10^{-4} , the need for full reconstruction of final states with two or more charged particles and several π^0 , plus the tagging of the second neutral *B*, place stringent requirements on the detector:

- a large and uniform acceptance, in particular down to small polar angles relative to the boost direction, to avoid particle losses;
- excellent detection efficiency for charged particles down to 60 MeV/ c and for photons to 20 MeV;
- very good momentum resolution to separate small signals from background;
- excellent energy and angular resolution for the detection of photons from π^0 and radia-

264 tive B decays in the range from 20 MeV to
265 4 GeV;

- 266 • very good vertex resolution, both transverse
267 and parallel to the beam;
- 268 • identification of electrons and muons, pri-
269 marily for the detection of semi-leptonic de-
270 cays used to tag the B flavor, and also for
271 the study of leptonic and rare decays;
- 272 • identification of hadrons over a wide range
273 of momenta for B flavor-tagging, for the
274 separation of pions from kaons in decay
275 modes such as $B^0 \rightarrow K^\pm \pi^\mp$ or $B^0 \rightarrow$
276 $\pi^+ \pi^-$, as well as in charm meson and τ de-
277 cays;
- 278 • a highly redundant, selective trigger system
279 so as to avoid significant signal losses and
280 systematic uncertainties;
- 281 • low-noise electronics and a data-acquisition
282 system of high flexibility and operational
283 stability;
- 284 • high degree of reliability of components and
285 frequent monitoring and automated calibra-
286 tions, plus control of the environmental con-
287 ditions to ensure continuous and stable op-
288 eration;
- 289 • an online computing and network system
290 that can control, process, and store the ex-
291 pected high volume of data; and
- 292 • detector components that can tolerate sig-
293 nificant doses of radiation and operate un-
294 der high-background conditions.

295 To reach the desired sensitivity for the most in-
296 teresting measurements, data sets of order 10^8 B
297 mesons will be needed. For the peak cross section
298 at the $\Upsilon(4S)$ of 1.1 nb, this will require an inte-
299 grated luminosity of order 100 fb^{-1} or three years
300 of reliable and highly efficient operation having a
301 detector of state-of-the art capabilities at a stor-
302 age ring operating at design luminosity or above
303 with few interruptions.

304 In the following, a brief overview of the princi-
305 pal components of the detector, the trigger, the

306 data-acquisition, and the online computing and
307 control system is given. This is to be followed by
308 brief descriptions of the PEP-II interaction re-
309 gion, the beam characteristics, and the impact
310 of the beam generated background on the design
311 and operation of the detector components. The
312 following chapters contain detailed presentations
313 of the design, construction, and performance for
314 all of the systems that make up the *BABAR* detec-
315 tor.

316 REFERENCES

- 317 1. N. Cabibbo, Phys. Rev. Lett. 10 (1963) 531;
318 M. Kobayashi, T. Maskawa, Prog. Th. Phys.
319 49 (1973) 652.
- 320 2. PEP-II An Asymmetric B Factory, Concep-
321 tual Design Report, SLAC-418, LBL-5379
322 (1993).
- 323 3. The *BABAR* Collaboration, Letter of Intent for
324 the Study of CP Violation and Heavy Flavor
325 Physics at PEP-II, SLAC-443 (1994).
- 326 4. The *BABAR* Physics Book, Physics at
327 an Asymmetric B Factory, P.F. Harrison,
328 H.R. Quinn, Editors, SLAC-R-504, (1998).
- 329 5. The Physics Program of a High-Luminosity
330 Asymmetric B Factory at SLAC, SLAC-353
331 (1989); Proceedings of the Workshop on
332 Physics and Detector Issues for a High Lu-
333 minosity Asymmetric B Factory at SLAC,
334 SLAC-373 (1991); Proceedings of B Factorys,
335 The State of the Art in Accelerators, Detec-
336 tors and Physics, SLAC-400 (1992).

2. Detector Overview

The *BABAR* detector was designed and built by a large, international team of scientists and engineers. Details of its original design are documented in the Technical Design Report [1], issued in 1995.

Figure 1 shows a longitudinal section through the detector center, and Figure 2 shows an end-view with the principal dimensions. The detector is configured around the PEP-II interaction region. To maximize the acceptance, while taking into account the kinematic boost chosen by the asymmetric beam energies, the whole detector is offset by 0.37 m in the direction of the lower energy beam. The inner detector consists of a silicon vertex tracker, a drift chamber, a ring-imaging Cherenkov detector, and a CsI calorimeter. These detector components are surrounded by a superconducting solenoid that is designed for a field of 1.5 T. The iron flux return is instrumented for muon and neutral hadron detection. All these components operate with good performance down to forward angles of 350 mrad and backward angles of 400 mr. For general reference, forward and backward are defined relative to the higher energy beam. As indicated in the two drawings, the right handed coordinate system is anchored on the main tracking system, the drift chamber, with the z -axis coinciding with its principal axis. This axis is offset relative to the beam axis by about 20 mrad. The y -axis points upward and the x -axis points away from the center of the PEP-II storage ring.

The detector is of relatively compact design, its transverse dimension being constrained by the elevation of the beam above the floor, 3.50 m. The solenoid radius was chosen by balancing the physics requirements and capabilities of the drift chamber and calorimeter against the overall cost. As in many similar systems, the calorimeter was the most expensive single system and thus considerable effort was made to minimize its total volume without undue reduction in performance of either the tracking system or the calorimeter. The geometric layout of the vertex detector is constrained by the space available between the components of the PEP-II magnet system, a

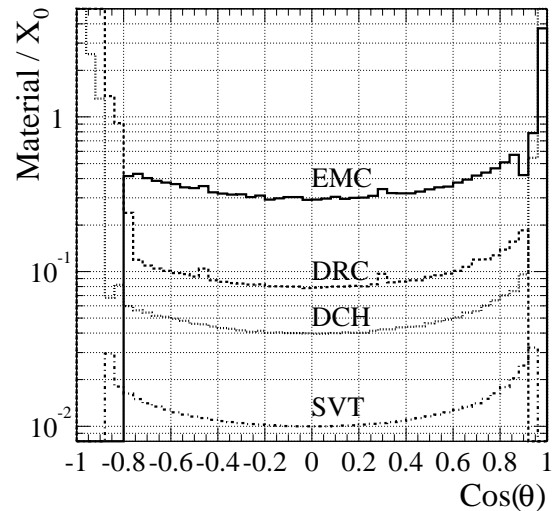


Figure 3. Amount of material surrounding the interaction point.

pair of dipole magnets (B1) followed by a pair of quadrupole magnets (Q1). These magnets are made of SmCo; they extend to 21 cm on either side of the interaction point and the dipoles limit the forward and backward acceptance of the tracking system. The SVT and these two sets of magnets are placed inside a long tube (4.5 m long and 0.217 m inner diameter) that supports the weight of these magnets. The central section of the support tube is fabricated of carbon-fibers composite (CFC) with a thickness to 1.08 % of a radiation length.

Since the average momentum of charged particles produced in B meson decay is less than 1 GeV/c, the errors on the measured track parameters are dominated by multiple Coulomb scattering, rather than the intrinsic spatial resolution of the detectors. Similarly, the detection efficiency and energy resolution of low energy photons are severely impacted by material in front of the calorimeter. Thus, special care has been given to keep the material in the active volume of the detector to a minimum. Figure 3 shows the distribution of material in the various detector systems in units of radiation lengths. Specifi-

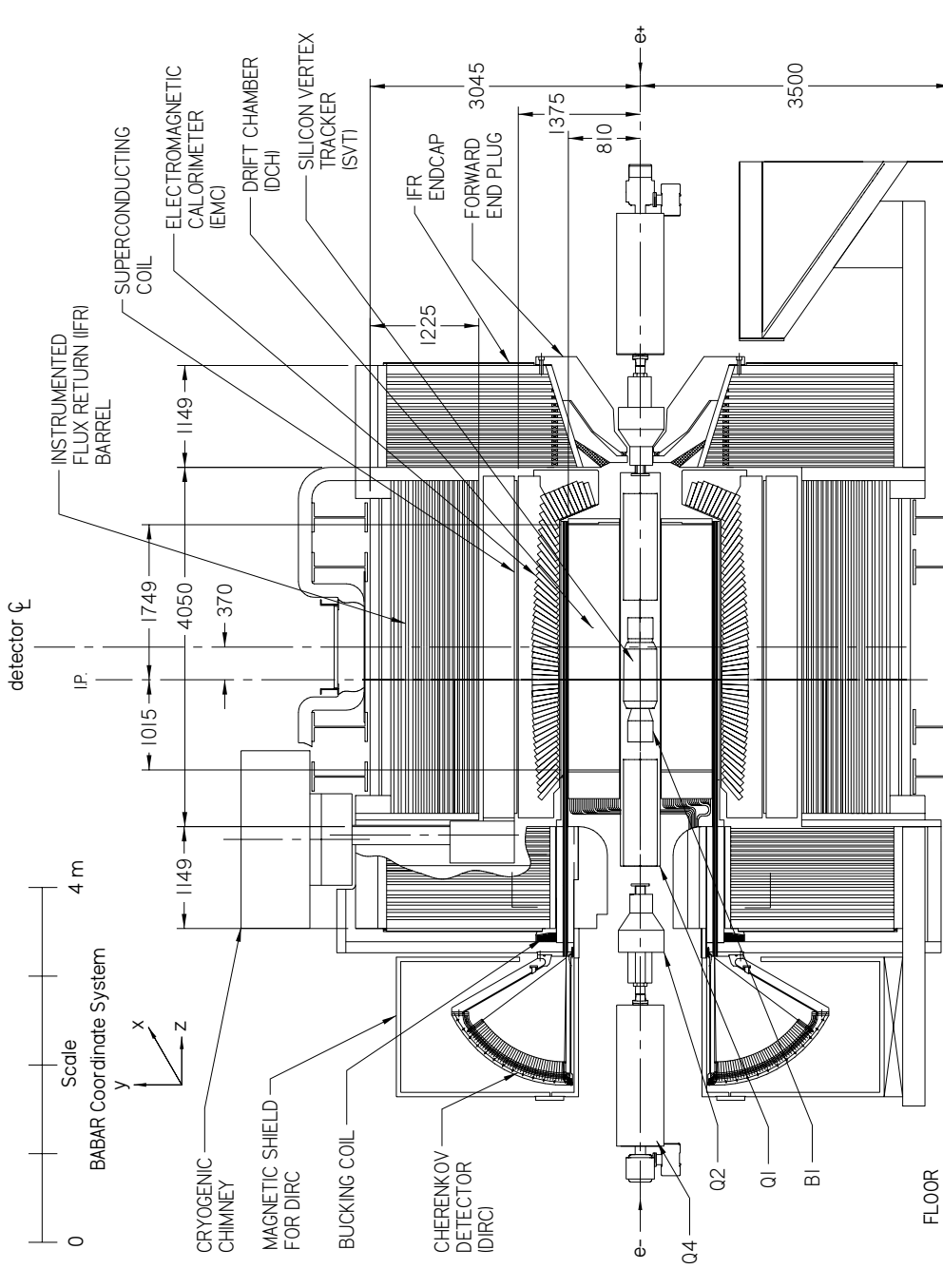


Figure 1. BABAR detector elevation view.

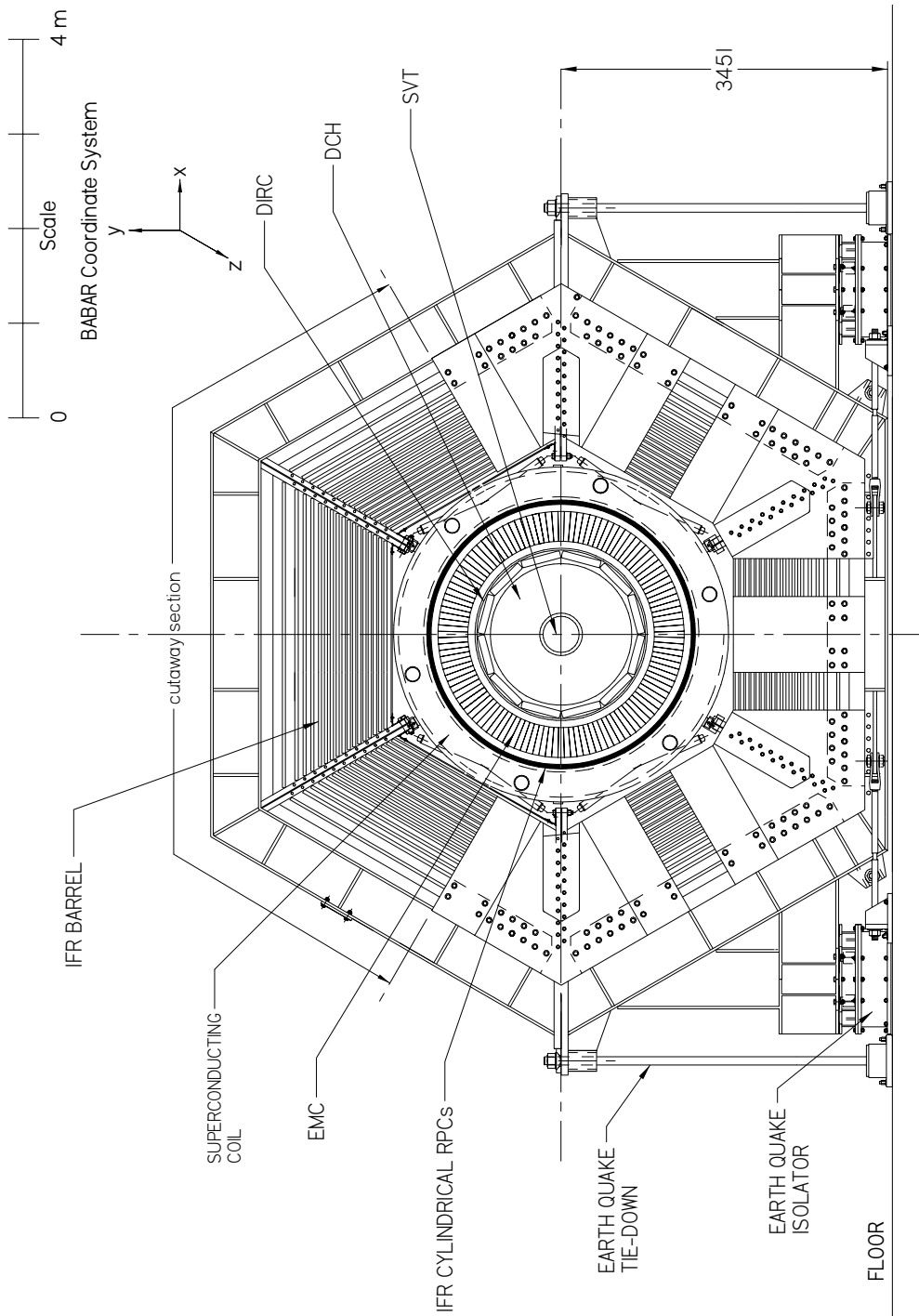


Figure 2. BABAR detector end view.

409 cally, each curve indicates the material a particle
410 traverses before it reaches the first active element
411 of a specific detector system.

412 2.1. Detector Components

413 The charged particle tracking system is made
414 of two components, the Silicon Vertex Tracker
415 (SVT) and the larger cylindrical Drift Chamber
416 (DCH).

417 The SVT is composed of five layers of double-
418 sided silicon strip detectors that are assembled
419 from modules with read-out at each end, thus
420 avoiding inactive material in the acceptance vol-
421 ume. The inner three layers primarily provide
422 position and angle information for the measure-
423 ment of the vertex position. They are mounted
424 as close to the water-cooled beryllium beam pipe
425 as practical, thus minimizing the impact of scat-
426 tering in the material of the beam pipe on the
427 extrapolation to the vertex. The outer two lay-
428 ers layers are placed at much larger radii, thus
429 providing the coordinate and angle measurement
430 needed for linking SVT tracks to DCH tracks.

431 The principal purpose of the DCH is the mo-
432 mentum and angle measurement for charged par-
433 ticles. It also supplies information for the charged
434 particle trigger and a measurement of dE/dx for
435 particle identification. The drift chamber is of
436 compact design, with 40 layers of small, approxi-
437 mately hexagonal cells. Longitudinal information
438 is derived from wires placed at small angles to the
439 principal axis. By choosing low mass wires, and a
440 helium based gas mixture the multiple scattering
441 inside the drift chamber is kept to a minimum.
442 All of the read-out electronics is mounted on the
443 backward endplate of the chamber, minimizing
444 the amount of material in front of the calorime-
445 ter endcap.

446 The DIRC, the Detector of Internally Reflected
447 Cherenkov light, is a novel concept and technol-
448 ogy employed primarily for the separation of pi-
449 ons and kaons from about 500 MeV/ c to the kine-
450 matic limit of 4.5 GeV/ c . Cherenkov light is pro-
451 duced in 4.9 m long bars of synthetic fused silica
452 of rectangular cross section, 1.7 cm \times 3.5 cm, and
453 transmitted by total internal reflection, while pre-
454 serving the angle of emission, to an array of pho-
455 tomultipliers. This array forms the backward wall

456 of a donut shaped water tank that is located out-
457 side of the backward end of the magnet. Images
458 of the Cherenkov rings are reconstructed from the
459 location and time of arrival of the signals in the
460 photomultipliers.

461 The Electro-Magnetic Calorimeter (EMC) is
462 designed to detect electromagnetic showers with
463 excellent energy and angular resolution over the
464 full energy range from 20 MeV to 4 GeV. This
465 coverage will allow the detection of low energy
466 π^0 from B decays and higher energy photons and
467 electrons from electromagnetic, weak, or radiative
468 processes. The EMC is a finely segmented array
469 of projective geometry made of thallium doped
470 cesium iodide (CsI(Tl)) crystals. The crystals are
471 arranged in modules that are supported individ-
472 ually from an external support structure. This
473 structure is build from two units, a barrel and a
474 forward endcap. To obtain the desired resolution
475 the amount of material in front and in-between
476 the crystals is held to a minimum. The individ-
477 ual crystals are read-out by pairs of silicon PIN
478 diodes. Low noise analog circuits and frequent,
479 precise calibration of the electronics and energy
480 response over the full dynamic range are crucial
481 for the desired performance.

482 The Instrumented Flux Return (IFR) is de-
483 signed to identify muons and to detect neutral
484 hadrons. For this purpose, the magnet flux return
485 steel in the barrel and the two endcaps is seg-
486 mented into layers, increasing in thickness from
487 2 cm on the inside to 10 cm on the outside.
488 Between these steel absorbers, single gap Resistive
489 Plate Chambers (RPC) are inserted which
490 detect streamers from ionizing particles via ex-
491 ternal capacitive read-out strips. There are 19
492 layers of RPCs in the barrel sectors and 18 layers
493 in the endcaps. Two additional cylindrical layers
494 of RPCs with four read-out planes are placed just
495 in front of the magnet cryostat to detect particles
496 exiting the EMC.

497 2.2. Electronics, Trigger, Data Acquisition 498 and On-line Computing

499 The electronics, trigger, data acquisition and
500 on-line computing represent a collection of tightly
501 coupled hardware and software systems. These
502 systems were designed to maximize the physics

503 data acceptance, maintainability and reliability 546
 504 while minimizing complexity, deadtime, down- 547
 505 time and cost. 548

506 • *Front-End Electronics* (FEE) assemblies are 550
 507 physically located on the detector and consist 551
 508 of signal processing and digitization 552
 509 electronics along with a standard digital 553
 510 transport mechanism into the data acqui-
 511 sition system.

512 • A robust and flexible two-level trigger han- 554
 513 dles the full accelerator collision rate, one 555
 514 in hardware, *Level 1* (L1), the other in soft- 556
 515 ware, *Level 3* (L3). A provision is made for 557
 516 an intermediate trigger (Level 2) should un- 558
 517 expected conditions require its implementa- 559
 518 tion. 560

519 • A data reduction, transport and event 562
 520 building system, *Online Dataflow* (ODF), 563
 521 handles digitized data from the FEE 564
 522 through the event building. This system 565
 523 also includes hardware elements providing 566
 524 fast control and timing signals. 567

525 • A farm of commercial Unix processors and 569
 526 associated software, *Online Event Process-* 570
 527 *ing* (OEP), provides the real-time environ- 571
 528 ment within which complete events are pro- 572
 529 cessed by the L3 trigger algorithms, partial 573
 530 event reconstruction is performed for mon- 574
 531 itoring, and event data is logged to an in- 575
 532 termediate storage. 576

533 • In a second farm of processors, *Online* 578
 534 *Prompt Reconstruction* (OPR), completely 579
 535 reconstructs on all physics events, per- 580
 536 forms monitoring and constants generation 581
 537 in near real-time. Physics event data are 582
 538 transferred to an object database and are 583
 539 thus available for further analyses. 584

540 • An *Online Run Control* (ORC) system han- 586
 541 dles the logic for managing the state of 587
 542 the detector systems, starting and stopping 588
 543 runs, and performing calibrations. A user 589
 544 interface provides operator access to detec- 590
 545 tor operation. 591

• A system to control and monitor the detec-
 tor and its support systems, *Online Detec-*
tor Control (ODC), is based upon the Ex-
 perimental Physics Industrial Control Sys-
 tem (EPICS) toolbox. This system includes
 communication links with the PEP-II ac-
 celerator complex. User interfaces provide
 operator access and displays.

2.2.1. Electronics

A common electronics architecture is shared
 by all *BABAR* detector subsystems; common ven-
 dors were chosen for many of its components such
 as VME crates and power supplies. Event data
 from the detector flows through the FEE cir-
 cuitry, while monitoring and control signals are
 handled by a separate, parallel system. All FEE
 systems, listed in Table 1, are mounted directly
 on the detector for performance reasons. This so-
 lution also minimizes the cable plant and avoids
 noise pickup and grounding loops generated in
 long analog signal cables. Electronics for all de-
 tector subsystems utilize standard *BABAR* inter-
 faces to the global electronics and software.

Each FEE chain consists of an amplifier, digi-
 tizer, a trigger latency buffer for storing data
 during the L1 trigger processing, and a de-
 randomizing event buffer for storing data between
 the L1 accept and subsequent transfer to the
 data acquisition system (Figure 4). Custom ICs
 have been developed to perform the signal pro-
 cessing (Table 1). The digital L1 latency buffers
 function as fixed length data pipelines and are
 managed by common protocol signals generated
 by the FCTS. All de-randomizing event buffers
 function as FIFOs capable of storing a fixed num-
 ber of events. During normal operation, analog
 signal processing, digitization, and data readout
 occur continuously and simultaneously.

Since many of the front-end circuits are totally
 inaccessible or access requires significant down-
 time, stringent requirements were placed on reli-
 ability. Most components underwent comprehen-
 sive MTBF (mean time between failure) studies.
 A burn-in procedure was followed for all circuits
 prior to installation with the goal of minimizing
 initial failure rates.

Table 1
 Overview of the Front-End Electronics (PH=pulseheight, ASD=amplifier-shaper-discriminator)

System	Elements	PH (bits)	Time (ns)	No. Channels	Custom ICs
SVT	Si Strips	4	-	150,000	ASD/storage
DCH	Wires	-	-	7,104	ASD
DIRC	PMTs	6	2	10,752	ADC/TDC
EMC	PIN diodes	-	0.5	13,160	ASD
		17-18	-	6,580	TDC/FIFO
IFR	RPC Strips	1	-	51,584	amplifier/shaper ADC ranging chip

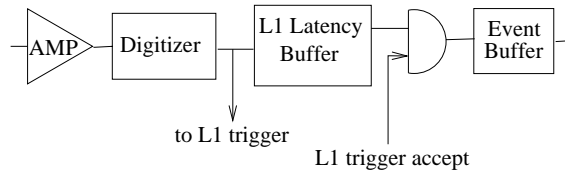


Figure 4. Front-End Electronics. Analog signals arrive from the left, proceed conditionally through the indicated steps and are injected into the remainder of the data acquisition system.

2.2.2. Trigger

The trigger system operates as a sequence of two independent stages, the second conditional upon the first. The Level 1 trigger is performed first at the machine crossing rate. Its goal is to sufficiently reduce that rate to a level acceptable for the Level 3 software trigger which runs on a farm of commercial processors.

The Level 1 trigger is optimized for simplicity and speed. It consists of a pipelined hardware processor. It is designed to provide an output trigger rate of $\lesssim 2$ kHz. The L1 trigger selection is based on a reduced data set from the DCH, EMC and IFR. The maximum L1 response latency for a given collision is $12 \mu\text{s}$. Based on both the complete event and L1 trigger information, the Level 3 software algorithms select events of interest stores them for processing. The L3 output rate is administratively limited to 120 Hz so as to not overload the downstream storage and

processing capacity. The trigger architecture is designed to accommodate a *Level 2* should unexpected background conditions demand higher performance in the future.

BABAR has no fast counters for triggering purposes, and bunch crossings are nearly continuous at 4 ns. Dedicated Level 1 trigger processors receive data which is continuously clocked in from the DCH, EMC and IFR detector subsystems. These processors produce clocked outputs to the fast control system at 30 MHz, the time granularity of resultant L1 Accept signals. The arrival of an L1 Accept signal by the data acquisition system causes a window of each subsystem's L1 Latency Buffer to be read out. This window size varies from about 500 ns for the silicon vertex tracker to only 4 – 16 μs wide for the calorimeter. Absolute timing information for the event, i.e., associating an event with a particular beam crossing, which is determined offline, is calculated using timing distributions for drift chamber hits within a track segment, waveforms from the electromagnetic calorimeter and accelerator timing fiducials.

2.2.3. Data Acquisition and Online Computing

The data acquisition and computing systems are responsible for the transport of event data from the detector FEE circuits all the way to mass storage with a minimum of deadtime and is shown schematically in Figure 5. These systems interface with the trigger and enable specialized

644 modes of operation, such as calibration and test-
645 ing. Other parts of these systems provide for the
646 control and monitoring of the detector and sup-
647 porting facilities.

648 Hardware

649 The data acquisition system hardware consists
650 of VME crates, specialized VME-based proces-
651 sors called Readout Modules (ROMs) [reference],
652 the Fast Control and Timing System, a UNIX
653 processor farm, various server machines and an
654 Ethernet [3] network. A ROM consists of a com-
655 mercial single board computer [4], event buffers,
656 an interface to the FCTS, and a custom *Person-*
657 *ality Card* which connects with the FEE circuits
658 via 1.2 Gbps fiber optic cables. The ROM pro-
659 vides the standard interface between the detec-
660 tor specific front-end electronics, the FCTS, and
661 the event builder. There are about 157 ROMs in
662 the system which are located in 19 physical VME
663 crates that represent 24 logical crates by virtue
664 of segmented backplanes. The FCTS system con-
665 sists of a VME crate plus individual Fast Control
666 Distribution Modules in each of the data acquisi-
667 tion VME crates.

668 Detector monitoring and control is accom-
669 plished via a standard set of components, includ-
670 ing a VME crate, a Motorola MVME177 single-
671 board computer, and various other VME mod-
672 ules [*this needs to be expanded to a small list*
673 *of VME modules*]. With the exception of the
674 solenoid magnet and gas systems, which have
675 their own specialized control and monitoring, all
676 other *BABAR* elements plug into this system.

677 The online computing system relies on a com-
678 plex of workstation consoles and servers with
679 0.8 TBytes of attached storage, all interconnected
680 with switched 100 Mbps and 1 Gbps Ethernet
681 networks. Multiple Gbps Ethernet links connect
682 the experimental hall with the SLAC computing
683 center.

684 Online Dataflow

685 The Online Dataflow software connects, con-
686 trols, and manages the flow of data in the data
687 acquisition hardware while incurring almost no
688 dead time. This code is divided between embed-

689 ded processors in the ROMs which run the Vx-
690 Works [5] real-time operating system and UNIX
691 processors running the Solaris operating system.
692 Dataflow provides: a) configuration and read-out
693 of the FEE over fiber links to the ROMs; b) data
694 transport, buffering and event building from the
695 ROMs to the OEP farm; c) masking and prescal-
696 ing of L1 triggers; and d) partitioning into mul-
697 tiple, independent data acquisition systems for
698 parallel calibrations and diagnostics. Additional
699 *feature extraction* (or FEX) code in the ROMs,
700 supplied by the detector system groups, extracts
701 physical signals from the raw data, performs gain
702 and pedestal correction, data sparsification, and
703 data formatting. Data from electronics calibra-
704 tions are accumulated in the ROMs, the chan-
705 nel response functions evaluated, the results com-
706 pared to reference data and subsequently applied
707 in feature extraction. Calibration data is stored
708 in a *Conditions Database*.

709 Online Event Processing

710 The On-line Event Processing receives and pro-
711 cesses data from the *DataFlow* event builder on
712 each of the 32 UNIX processors. In particular,
713 OEP orchestrates the following tasks: a) L3 trig-
714 ger algorithms; b) “fast monitoring” to assure
715 data quality; and c) logging the selected events
716 to disk. Logging involves a process to merge the
717 multiple data output streams to a single file.

718 Online Prompt Reconstruction

719 Bridging the online and offline worlds is
720 OPR [6]. This system reads raw data recorded to
721 disk by OEP and, operating on farm of 150 Unix
722 processors, selects physics events, performs com-
723 plete reconstruction, performs a “rolling” calibra-
724 tion, collects extensive monitoring data for qual-
725 ity assurance and writes the result into an object
726 database. A “rolling” calibration is the gener-
727 ation of reconstruction constants during normal
728 event processing which are then applied to the
729 processing of subsequent data.

730 Online Detector and Run Control

731 The ODC system controls and extensively
732 monitors the electronics and environment of the

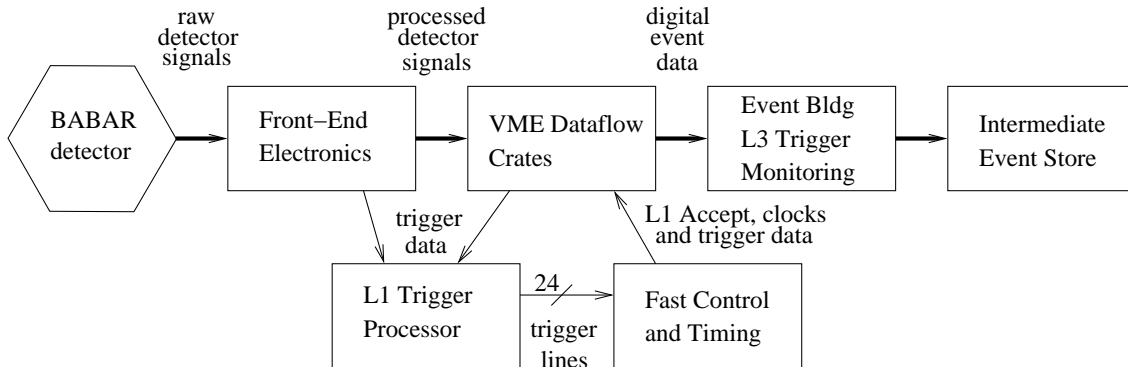


Figure 5. Data acquisition schematic.

733 detector and assures the safety of the detector.
 734 Its implementation is based on EPICS [2], provid-
 735 ing detector-wide standardization for the control
 736 and monitoring, diagnostics and alarm handling.
 737 ODC also provides communication with PEP-II
 738 and the magnet control system. Monitoring data
 739 are archived in the *Ambient Database*.

740 The ORC system ties together the various com-
 741 ponents of the online system and provides the op-
 742 erator with a single graphical interface to control
 743 the detector operation. Complex configurations
 744 are stored in a *Configuration Database*; keys to
 745 the configuration used for any run is stored along
 746 with the data. The Event, Ambient, Conditions
 747 and Configuration Databases are implemented in
 748 an object database [7].

749 REFERENCES

- 750 1. *BABAR* Technical Design Report, SLAC-R-
 751 457 (1995)
- 752 2. EPICS
- 753 3. Any of the IEEE 802 family of standards for
 754 computer networking, running at rates of 10
 755 Mbps, 100 Mbps or 1000 Mbps.
- 756 4. PowerPC
- 757 5. VxWorks Real-time operating system (Tor-
 758 nado??), Wind River Systems, Inc., 500 Wind
 759 River Way, Alameda, CA 94501 USA.
- 760 6. Francesco Safai Tehrani, "The Babar Prompt
 761 Reconstruction Manager: A Real Life Ex-

- 762 ample of a Constructive Approach to Soft-
 763 ware Development.", submitted to Computer
 764 Physics Communications
 765 7. Objectivity/DB, Objectivity, Inc., 301B East
 766 Evelyn Avenue, Mountain View, California,
 767 94041, USA.

3. PEP II Storage Rings and Their Impact on the BABAR Detector

3.1. PEP-II Storage Rings

PEP-II is an e^+e^- storage ring system designed to operate at a center of mass (c.m.) energy of 10.58 GeV, corresponding to the mass of the $\Upsilon(4S)$ resonance. The parameters of these energy asymmetric storage rings are presented in Table 2. PEP-II has surpassed its design luminosity, both in terms of the instantaneous and the integrated daily luminosity, with significantly fewer bunches than anticipated. A full description of the design and operational experience of PEP-II has recently been published [1] [2].

Table 2

PEP-II beam parameters. Values are given both for design and typical colliding beam operation in the first year. HER and LER refer to the high energy e^- and low energy e^+ ring, respectively. σ_{Lx} , σ_{Ly} , and σ_{Lz} refer to the horizontal, vertical, and longitudinal rms size of the luminous region.

Parameters	Design	Typical
Energy HER/LER (GeV)	9.0/3.1	9.0/3.1
Current HER/LER (A)	0.75/2.15	0.7/1.3
# of bunches	1658	553-829
Bunch spacing (ns)	4.2	6.3-10.5
σ_{Lx} (μm)	110	120
σ_{Ly} (μm)	3.3	5.6
σ_{Lz} (mm)	9	9
Luminosity ($10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$)	3	2.5
Luminosity (pb^{-1}/d)	135	120

PEP-II typically operates in a series of 40 minute fills during which the colliding beams coast. At the end of each fill, it takes about three minutes to replenish the beams for the next fill. After a loss of the stored beams, it takes approximately 10-15 minutes to refill the two beams. BABAR divides the data into runs, defined as periods of three hour duration or less during which beam and detector conditions are judged to be stable. While most of the data are recorded at the peak of the $\Upsilon(4S)$ resonance, some 12% are taken at a c.m. energy 40 MeV below to allow for studies of the non-resonant background.

3.2. Impact of PEP-II on BABAR Layout

The large beam currents inherent to the high luminosity of PEP-II and the necessity to separate closely-spaced bunches as close as possible to the interaction point (IP), tightly couple the issues of detector design, interaction region layout, and remediation of machine-induced background. The bunches collide head-on and are separated magnetically in the horizontal plane by a pair of dipole magnets (B1), followed by a series of offset quadrupoles. The tapered B1 dipoles, located at ± 21 cm on either side of the IP, and the Q1 quadrupoles are made of samarium-cobalt and operate inside the field of the BABAR solenoid, while Q2, Q4, and Q5, located outside or in the fringe field of the solenoid, are standard iron magnets. The collision axis is off-set from the z -axis of the BABAR detector by about 20 mrad in the horizontal plane [3].

The interaction region is enclosed by a water-cooled beam pipe of 27.9 mm outer radius, composed of two thin layers of beryllium (0.83 mm and 0.53 mm) with a 1.48-mm water channel in-between. To attenuate synchrotron radiation, the inner surface of the pipe is covered with a thin layer of gold (approximately 4 μm). In addition, the beam pipe is wrapped with 150 μm of tantalum foil on either side of the IP, i.e., beyond $z = +10.1$ cm and $z = -7.9$ cm. The total thickness of the central beam pipe section at normal incidence corresponds to 1.06% of a radiation length.

The beam pipe, the permanent magnets and the SVT are assembled and aligned and then enclosed in a 4.5 m-long support tube. This rigid structure is inserted into the BABAR detector, spanning the IP. The central section of this tube is fabricated from carbon-fiber epoxy composite thus reducing its thickness to 1.08% of a radiation length.

3.3. Luminosity, Beam Energies and Position

The beam parameters that are most critical for the BABAR data analysis are the luminosity, the energies of the two beams and the position and size of the luminous region.

3.3.1. Luminosity

While PEP-II uses a high-rate luminosity monitor sampling radiative Bhabha scattering to provide a fast relative measurement of the luminosity for operations, *BABAR* derives the absolute luminosity off-line from QED processes. The best result is obtained from $\mu^+\mu^-$ pairs. For a sample of 1 fb^{-1} , the statistical error is 1.3%, compared to a systematic error of 0.5% on the relative, and 1.5% on the absolute value of the luminosity. This error is currently dominated by uncertainties in the Monte Carlo generator and the simulation of the detector. It is expected that with a better understanding of the efficiency, the overall systematic error on the absolute value of the luminosity can be reduced by a factor of two.

3.3.2. Beam Energies

During operation, the mean energies of the two beams are calculated from the total magnetic bending strength (including the effects of off-axis quadrupole fields, steering magnets, and wigglers) and the average deviations of the accelerating frequencies from their central values. While the systematic uncertainty in the PEP-II calculation of the absolute beam energies is estimated to be 5-10 MeV, the relative energy setting for each beam is accurate and stable to about 1 MeV. The energy spread of the LER and HER is 2.3 MeV and 5.5 MeV, respectively.

To ensure that data are recorded close to the peak of the $\Upsilon(4S)$ resonance, the observed ratio of $B\bar{B}$ enriched hadronic events to lepton pair production is monitored on-line. At the peak of the resonance, a 2.5% change in the $B\bar{B}$ production rate corresponds to a 2 MeV change in the c.m. energy, a value that is close to the tolerance to which the energy of PEP-II can be held. However, a drop in the $B\bar{B}$ rate does not distinguish between energy settings below or above the $\Upsilon(4S)$ peak. The sign of the energy change must be determined from other indicators. The best monitor and absolute calibration of the c.m. energy is derived from the measured c.m. momentum of fully reconstructed B mesons combined with the known B meson mass. An absolute error of 1.1 MeV can be obtained for an integrated luminosity of 1 fb^{-1} . This error is limited by both

the knowledge of the B mass [4] and the detector resolution.

The beam energies are necessary input for the calculation of two kinematic variables that are commonly used to separate signal from background in the analysis of exclusive B meson decays. These variables make optimum use of the measured quantities and are largely uncorrelated. They are chosen to be invariant under Lorentz transformations and thus can be evaluated both in the laboratory and c.m. frame.

The first variable, ΔE , can be expressed in a Lorentz invariant form as

$$\Delta E = (2q_B q_i - s)/2\sqrt{s}, \quad (1)$$

where $q_B = (E_B, \vec{p}_B)$ and $q_i = (E_i, \vec{p}_i)$ are the Lorentz vectors representing the momentum of the B candidate and of the initial state, $q_i = q_{e+} + q_{e-}$. In the c.m. frame, ΔE takes the familiar form

$$\Delta E = E_B^* - E_{beam}^*, \quad (2)$$

where E_B^* is the reconstructed energy of the B meson and E_{beam}^* equals half the c.m. energy. The spread in ΔE receives a sizable contribution from the beam energy spread, but it is generally dominated by detector resolution.

The second variable is the energy-substituted mass, m_{ES} , defined as $m_{ES}^2 = q_B^2$ with the constraint $\Delta E = 0$. In the laboratory frame, this quantity can be determined from the measured three-momentum \vec{p}_B of the B candidate without explicit knowledge of the masses of the decay products:

$$m_{ES} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{2}s + \vec{p}_B \cdot \vec{p}_i\right)^2 / E_i^2 - p_B^2}. \quad (3)$$

In the c.m. frame ($\vec{p}_i = 0$) this variable takes the familiar form

$$m_{ES} = \sqrt{E_{beam}^{*2} - p_B^{*2}}, \quad (4)$$

where p_B^* is the c.m. momentum of the B meson, derived from the momenta of its decay products. The B meson energy is substituted by E_{beam}^* . The spread of m_{ES} is dominated by the spread in E_{beam}^* , $\sigma_{E_{beam}^*} = 2.6 \text{ MeV}$ which can be measured from the m_{ES} distribution for samples of fully reconstructed B meson decays.

931 3.3.3. Beam Direction

932 The direction of the beams relative to *BABAR*
 933 is measured iteratively run-by-run using $e^+e^- \rightarrow$
 934 e^+e^- and $e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-$ events. The resultant
 935 uncertainty in the direction of the boost from the
 936 laboratory to the c.m. frame, $\vec{\beta}$, is about 1 mrad,
 937 dominated by alignment errors. This translates
 938 into an uncertainty of about 0.3 MeV in m_{ES} . $\vec{\beta}$
 939 is consistent to within 1 mrad with the orienta-
 940 tion of the elongated beam spot (see below). It is
 941 stable to better than 1 mrad from one run to the
 942 next.

943 3.3.4. Beam Size and Position

944 The size and position of the luminous region are
 945 critical parameters for the decay-time-dependent
 946 analyses and their values are monitored contin-
 947 uously on-line and off-line. The design values for
 948 the size of the luminous region are presented in
 949 Table 2. The vertical size is too small to be mea-
 950 sured directly. It is inferred from the measured
 951 luminosity, the horizontal size, and the beam cur-
 952 rents; it varies typically by 1-2 μm .

953 The transverse position, size and angles of the
 954 luminous region relative to the *BABAR* coordinate
 955 system are determined by analyzing the distribu-
 956 tion of the distance of closest approach to the
 957 z -axis of the tracks in well measured two-track
 958 events as a function of the azimuth ϕ . The lon-
 959 gitudinal parameters are derived from the longi-
 960 tudinal vertex distribution of the two tracks. A
 961 combined fit to 9 parameters (3 average coordi-
 962 nates, 3 widths, and 3 small angles) converges
 963 readily, even after significant changes in the beam
 964 position. The uncertainties in the average beam
 965 position are of the order of a few μm in the trans-
 966 verse plane and 100 μm along the collision axis.
 967 Run-by-run variations in the beam position are
 968 comparable to these measurement uncertainties,
 969 indicating that the beams are stable over the pe-
 970 riod of a typical run. The fit parameters are
 971 stored run by run in the conditions database.
 972 These measurements are also checked off-line by
 973 measuring the primary vertices in multi-hadron
 974 events. The measured horizontal and longitudi-
 975 nal beam sizes, corrected for tracking resolution,
 976 are consistent with those measured by PEP-II.

977 3.4. Beam Background Sources

978 The primary sources of steady-state accelera-
 979 tor backgrounds are, in order of increasing im-
 980 portance: synchrotron radiation in the vicinity of
 981 the interaction region; interactions between the
 982 beam particles and the residual gas in either ring;
 983 and electromagnetic showers generated by beam-
 984 beam collisions [5] [6] [7]. In addition, there are
 985 other background sources that fluctuate widely
 986 and can lead to very large instantaneous rates,
 987 thereby disrupting stable operation.

988 3.4.1. Synchrotron Radiation

989 Synchrotron radiation in nearby dipoles, the
 990 interaction-region quadrupole doublets and the
 991 B1 separation dipoles generates many kW of
 992 power and is potentially a severe background.
 993 The beam orbits, vacuum-pipe apertures and
 994 synchrotron-radiation masks have been designed
 995 such that most of these photons are channeled to
 996 a distant dump; the remainder are forced to un-
 997 dergo multiple scatters before they can enter the
 998 *BABAR* acceptance. The remaining synchrotron
 999 radiation background is dominated by x-rays
 1000 (scattered from the tungsten tip of a mask) gener-
 1001 ated by dipole fields in HER low- β quadrupoles.
 1002 This residual background is very low and has not
 1003 presented a significant problem.

1004 3.4.2. Beam-Gas Scattering

1005 Beam-gas bremsstrahlung and Coulomb scat-
 1006 tering off residual gas molecules cause beam par-
 1007 ticles to escape the acceptance of the ring if their
 1008 energy loss or scattering angle are sufficiently
 1009 large. The intrinsic rate of these processes is pro-
 1010 portional to the product of the beam current and
 1011 the residual pressure (which itself increases with
 1012 current). Their relative importance, as well as the
 1013 resulting spatial distribution and absolute rate of
 1014 lost particles impinging the vacuum pipe in the
 1015 vicinity of the detector, depend on the beam op-
 1016 tical functions, the limiting apertures, and the
 1017 residual-pressure profile around the entire rings.
 1018 The separation dipoles bend the energy-degraded
 1019 particles from the two beams in opposite direc-
 1020 tions and consequently most *BABAR* detector sys-
 1021 tems exhibit occupancy peaks in the horizontal
 1022 plane, i.e., the LER background near $\phi = 0^\circ$ and

1023 HER background near $\phi = 180^\circ$.

1024 During the first few months of operation and
1025 during the first month after a local venting of
1026 the machine, the higher pressures lead to signifi-
1027 cantly enhanced background from beam-gas scat-
1028 tering. The situation has improved significantly
1029 with time due to scrubbing of the vacuum pipe
1030 by synchrotron radiation. Towards the end of the
1031 first year of data-taking, the dynamic pressure in
1032 both rings had dropped below the design goal,
1033 and the corresponding background contributions
1034 are much reduced. Nevertheless, beam-gas scat-
1035 tering remains the primary source of radiation
1036 damage in the SVT and the dominant source of
1037 background in all detectors systems, except the
1038 DIRC.

1039 3.4.3. Luminosity Background

1040 Radiative Bhabha scattering results in energy-
1041 degraded electrons or positrons hitting aperture
1042 limitations within a few meters of the IP and
1043 spraying *BABAR* with electromagnetic shower de-
1044 bris. This background is directly proportional to
1045 the instantaneous luminosity and thus is expected
1046 to contribute an increasing fraction of the total
1047 background in the future.

1048 3.4.4. Background Fluctuations

1049 In addition to these steady-state background
1050 sources, there are instantaneous sources of radia-
1051 tion that fluctuate on diverse time scales:

- 1052 • beam losses during injection,
- 1053 • intense bursts of radiation, varying in du-
1054 ration from a few ms to several minutes,
1055 currently attributed to very small dust par-
1056 ticles, and
- 1057 • non-Gaussian tails from beam-beam inter-
1058 actions (especially of the e^+ beam) that are
1059 highly sensitive to adjustments in collima-
1060 tor settings and ring tunes.

1061 These effects typically lead to short periods of
1062 high background and have resulted in a large
1063 number of *BABAR*-initiated beam aborts (see be-
1064 low).

1065 3.5. Radiation Protection and Monitoring

1066 A system has been developed to monitor the in-
1067 stantaneous and integrated radiation doses, and
1068 to either abort the beams or to halt or limit the
1069 rate of injection, if conditions become critical. In
1070 addition, DCH and IFR currents, as well as DIRC
1071 and IFR counting rates, are monitored; abnor-
1072 mally high rates signal critical conditions.

1073 Radiation monitoring and protection systems
1074 are installed for the SVT, the DCH electronics,
1075 and the EMC. The radiation doses are measured
1076 with silicon photo-diodes. For the SVT, 12 diodes
1077 are arranged in three horizontal planes, bottom,
1078 middle and top, with four diodes in each plane,
1079 placed at $z = +12.1$ cm and $z = -8.5$ cm and at
1080 a radial distance of 3 cm from the beam line [8].
1081 The diode leakage current, after correction for
1082 temperature and radiation damage effects, is pro-
1083 portional to the dose rate. The four diodes in the
1084 middle are exposed to about ten times more ra-
1085 diation than the others. These mid-plane diodes
1086 are connected to the beam abort system, while
1087 the remaining eight diodes at the top and bottom
1088 are used to monitor the radiation dose delivered
1089 to the SVT bulk. The accuracy of the measured
1090 average dose rate is better than 0.5 mRad/s. The
1091 integrated dose, as measured by the SVT diodes,
1092 is presented in Figure 6.

1093 The radiation level at the drift chamber and the
1094 calorimeter is more than two orders of magnitude
1095 lower than at the SVT. To amplify the signal, the
1096 PIN diodes are mounted on small CsI(Tl) crystals
1097 (about 10 cm^3). These silicon diodes are installed
1098 in sets of four. Three sets are mounted on the
1099 front face of the endcap calorimeter and one set
1100 on the backward endplate of the drift chamber,
1101 close to the read-out electronics. The signals of
1102 the four diodes in each set are summed, amplified
1103 and fed into the radiation protection electronics.
1104 Only one of the three diode sets of the EMC is
1105 used at any given time. The DCH and the EMC
1106 use identical hardware and decision algorithms.
1107 They limit injection rates or abort beams, when-
1108 ever an instantaneous dose equivalent to about
1109 1 Rad/day is exceeded.

1110 The SVT employs a different strategy and cir-
1111 cuitry to assess whether the measured radiation
1112 levels merit a beam abort or a reduction in single-

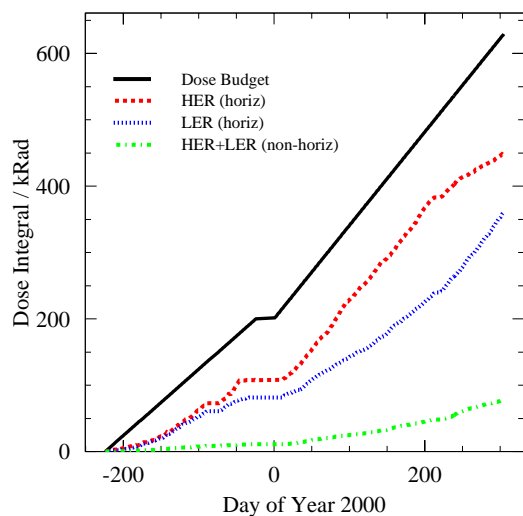


Figure 6. The integrated radiation dose as measured by PIN diodes located at three different positions near the SVT. Also shown is the SVT radiation budget for the first year of operation.

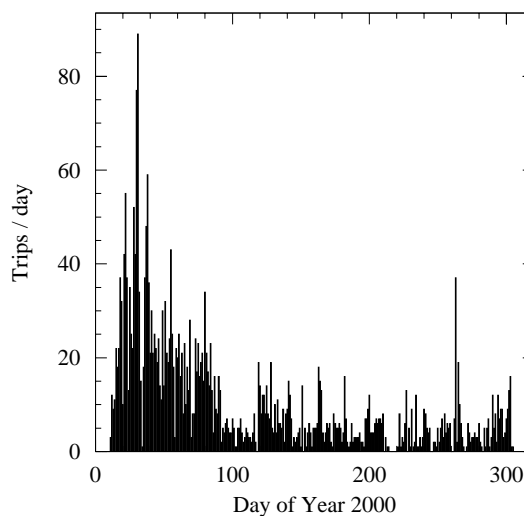


Figure 7. Daily rates of beam aborts initiated by the SVT radiation protection diodes, summed over regular data-taking and PEP-II injection.

1113 beam injection rate. It was realized that every
 1114 beam dump initiated by *BABAR* would be followed
 1115 by a 5-10 minute period of injection with significant
 1116 radiation exposure. Thus to minimize the ratio of the
 1117 integrated radiation dose to the integrated luminosity,
 1118 it has been beneficial to tolerate transient high-dose
 1119 events during data-taking as long as the integrated
 1120 dose remains less than the typical dose accumulated
 1121 during injection. To differentiate between very high
 1122 instantaneous radiation and sustained high dose rates,
 1123 different trip thresholds are enforced on two different
 1124 time scales: an instantaneous dose of 1 Rad accumulated
 1125 over 1 ms, and an average of 50 mRad/s measured
 1126 over a 5-minute period. In addition, higher
 1127 thresholds are used during injection, since an
 1128 aborted injection will delay the return to data-taking.

1131 Figure 7 shows the daily rate of beam aborts
 1132 initiated by the SVT protection diodes since January
 1133 2000. Initially as many as 80 beam aborts were
 1134 triggered per day, while the average for sta-

1135 ble operation is now significantly less than ten.
 1136 The measures described above, combined with a
 1137 significant reduction in large background fluctua-
 1138 tions, have been very effective in protecting the
 1139 detector against radiation damage, as well as very
 1140 important to the effort of increasing the combined
 1141 live time of the machine and detector to greater
 1142 than 75%.

1143 3.6. Impact of Beam-Generated Back- 1144 ground on *BABAR*

1145 Beam-generated backgrounds affect the detector
 1146 in multiple ways. They cause radiation damage
 1147 to the detector components and the electronics
 1148 and thus may limit the lifetime of the exper-
 1149 iment. They may also cause electrical breakdown
 1150 and damage or generate large numbers of extrane-
 1151 ous signals leading to problems with bandwidth
 1152 limitations of the data acquisition system and
 1153 with event reconstruction. The event reconstruc-
 1154 tion is affected both by degraded resolution and
 1155 by losses in efficiency.

1156 The impact of the beam-generated background

1157 on the lifetime and on the operation of the dif-
 1158 ferent detector systems varies significantly. Ta-
 1159 ble 3 lists the limits on the instantaneous and
 1160 integrated background levels in terms of the total
 1161 dose and instantaneous observables. These limits
 1162 are estimates derived from tests and/or experi-
 1163 ence in earlier experiments. For each detector sys-
 1164 tem, an annual radiation allowance has been es-
 1165 tablished taking into account the total estimated
 1166 lifetime of the components and the expected an-
 1167 nual operating conditions. The typical values ac-
 1168 cumulated for the first year of operation are also
 1169 stated in the table.

1170 Systematic studies of background rates were
 1171 performed with stable stored beams. Measure-
 1172 ments of the current-dependence of the back-
 1173 grounds were carried out for single beams, two
 1174 beams not colliding, and colliding beams with the
 1175 goal to identify the current background sources,
 1176 to develop schemes of reducing these sources and
 1177 to extrapolate to operation at higher luminosity
 1178 [7]. These experimental studies were comple-
 1179 mented by Monte Carlo simulations of beam-gas
 1180 scattering and of the propagation of showers in
 1181 the detector. The studies show that the relative
 1182 importance of the single-beam and luminosity
 1183 background contributions varies, as illustrated
 1184 in Figure 8. Data for the IFR are not shown be-
 1185 cause this system is largely insensitive to beam-
 1186 generated backgrounds, except for the outer layer
 1187 of the forward endcap due to insufficient shielding
 1188 of the external beam line components.

1189 The experience of the first year of operation
 1190 and the concern for future operation for each of
 1191 the detectors are summarized as follows.

1192 **SVT:** The most significant concern for the
 1193 SVT with regard to machine background is the
 1194 integrated radiation dose. The instantaneous and
 1195 integrated dose rates in the radiation protection
 1196 diodes are representative, to within about a fac-
 1197 tor of two, of the radiation doses absorbed by
 1198 the SVT modules. The exposure in the horizon-
 1199 tal planes is an order of magnitude larger than
 1200 elsewhere, averaging 15-25 mRad/s during sta-
 1201 ble beam operation. The worst integrated dose
 1202 is 450 kRad, 30% below the allowance, giving
 1203 confidence that the SVT can be operated several
 1204 more years (see Figure 6).

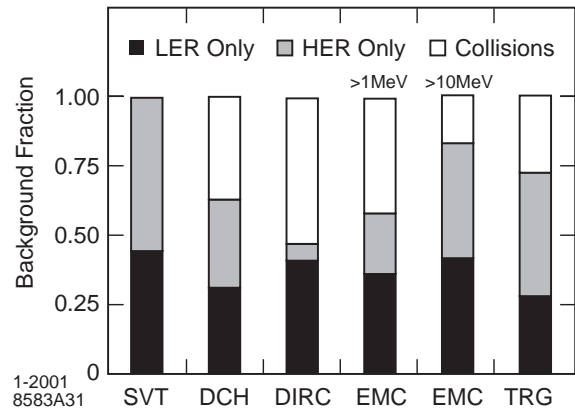


Figure 8. Fractional steady-state background contributions in *BABAR* detector systems, measured for single beams and colliding beams under stable conditions ($I^+ = 1.25 A$, $I^- = 0.75 A$, $L = 2.3 \times 10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$). The contributions are derived from the measured doses in the horizontal plane for the SVT, the total currents in the DCH, the rates in the DIRC photo-tubes, the occupancy and number of photons above 10 MeV in the EMC, and the L1 trigger rates.

1205 **DCH:** For the DCH, the currents on the wires
 1206 are the main concern, both because of the lim-
 1207 ited capacity of the HV power supplies and the
 1208 effect of wire aging. The currents drawn are ap-
 1209 proximately uniformly distributed among the 44
 1210 HV supplies, one for each quadrant of superlay-
 1211 ers 2-10, and two per quadrant for superlayer 1.
 1212 Consequently, the total current limit is close to
 1213 the sum of the limits of the individual supplies.
 1214 During stable operation the total chamber cur-
 1215 rent is 200-300 μA . However, radiation spikes can
 1216 lead to currents that occasionally exceed the limit
 1217 of 1000 μA , causing HV supplies to trip. Other
 1218 background effects are measured to be well be-
 1219 low the estimated lifetime limits and thus not a
 1220 serious issue at this time. The average wire occu-
 1221 pancy has not exceeded 1-2% during stable opera-
 1222 tion, but the extrapolation to future operation at
 1223 higher luminosity and currents remains a major
 1224 concern.

Table 3

BABAR background tolerance. Operational limits are expressed either as lifetime limits (radiation-damage and ageing-related quantities), or in terms of instantaneous observables (DCH current, DIRC and L1-trigger rates).

Detector system	Limiting factor and impact	Operational limit	First-year typical
SVT sensors & electronics	Integrated dose: radiation damage	2 MRad	0.33 MRad (hor.-plane modules) 0.06 MRad (other modules)
SVT sensors	Instantaneous dose: diode shorts	1 Rad/ms	N/A
DCH: electronics	Integrated dose: radiation damage	20 kRad	≤ 100 Rad
DCH: wire current	Accumulated charge: wire aging	100 mC/cm	8 mC/cm
DCH: total current	HV system limitations	1000 μ A	250 μ A (steady-state)
DIRC photo tubes	Counting rate: TDC dead time	200 kHz	110 kHz (steady-state, well-shielded sector)
EMC crystals	Integrated dose: radiation damage	10 kRad	0.25 kRad (worst case)
L1 trigger	Counting rate: DAQ dead time	2 kHz	0.7 kHz (steady-state)

1225 **DIRC:** The DIRC quartz bars were tested up 1246
 1226 to doses of 100 kRad without showing any mea- 1247
 1227 surable effects and thus radiation damage is not 1248
 1228 a concern. The present operational limit of the 1249
 1229 DIRC is set by the TDC electronics which induces 1250
 1230 significant dead time at rates above 200-300 kHz, 1251
 1231 well above the stable beam rate of 110 kHz in 1252
 1232 well shielded areas. Roughly half the present rate 1253
 1233 originates from radiative Bhabha scattering. The 1254
 1234 counting rate is due to debris from electromag- 1255
 1235 netic showers entering the water-filled stand-off 1256
 1236 box. Efforts are underway to improve the shield- 1257
 1237 ing of the beam pipe nearby. 1258

1238 **EMC:** The lifetime of the EMC is set by 1259
 1239 the reduction in light collection in the CsI crys- 1260
 1240 tals due to radiation damage. The cumulative 1261
 1241 dose absorbed by the EMC is measured by a 1262
 1242 large set of RADFETs [23] distributed over the 1263
 1243 barrel and endcap. The absorbed dose increases 1264
 1244 approximately linearly with the integrated lumi- 1265
 1245 nosity. The highest dose to date was observed 1266

in the innermost ring of the endcap, close to 250 Rad, while the barrel crystals accumulated about 80 Rad. The observed reduction in light collection of 10-15% in the worst place, and 4-7% in the barrel, is consistent with expectation (see Chapter 11).

The energy resolution is dependent on the single crystal readout threshold, currently set at 1 MeV. During stable beam conditions the average crystal occupancy for random triggers is 16%, with 10% originating from electronics noise in the absence of any energy deposition. The spectrum of photons observed in the EMC from the LER and HER is presented in Figure 9. The HER produces a somewhat harder spectrum. The average occupancy for a threshold of 1 MeV and the average number of crystals with a deposited energy of more than 10 MeV are shown in Figure 10 as a function of beam currents for both single and colliding beams. The occupancy increases significantly at smaller polar angles, in the forward

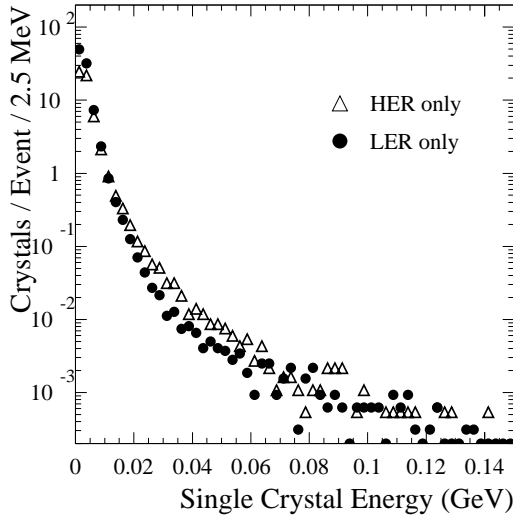


Figure 9. The energy spectrum of photons recorded in the EMC by random triggers with single beams at typical operating currents, LER at 1.1 A and HER at 0.7 A. The electronic noise has been subtracted.

1267 endcap and the backward barrel sections, and in
 1268 the horizontal plane. The rate increase is ap-
 1269 proximately linear with the single beam currents.
 1270 The data recorded with separated beams produce
 1271 backgrounds that are consistent with those pro-
 1272 duced by single beams. For colliding beams, there
 1273 is an additional flux of photons originating from
 1274 small angle radiative Bhabha scattering. This ef-
 1275 fect is larger for low energy photons and thus it
 1276 is expected that at higher luminosities the low
 1277 energy background will raise the occupancy and
 1278 thereby limit the EMC energy resolution.

1279 **L1 Trigger:** During stable beam operation
 1280 the typical L1 trigger rate is below 1 kHz, about a
 1281 factor of of two below the data acquisition band-
 1282 width limit of about 2-2.5 kHz. Experience shows
 1283 that background bursts and other rate spikes can
 1284 raise the data volume by as much as a factor of
 1285 two and thus it is necessary to aim for steady state
 1286 rates significant below the stated limit. For the
 1287 L1 trigger, the dominant sources of DCH triggers

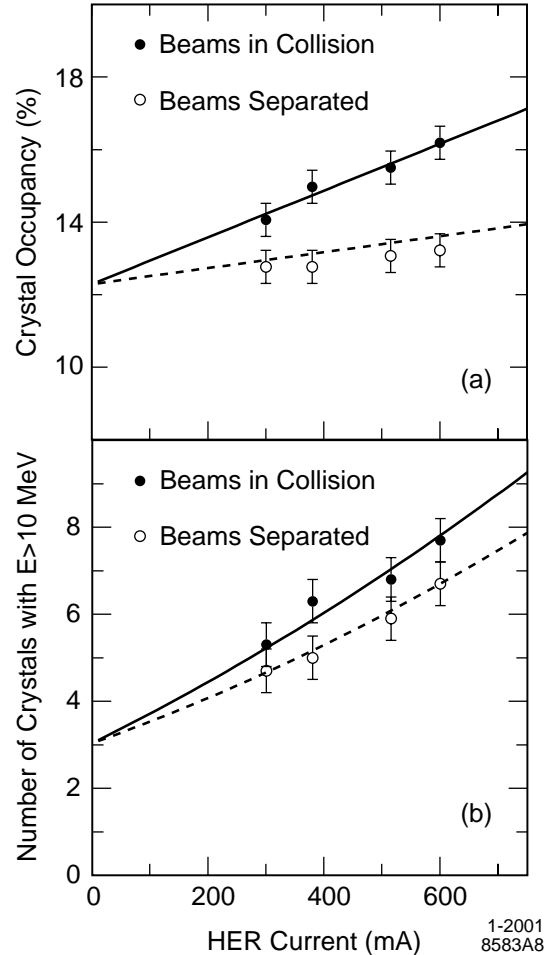


Figure 10. Average rates in the EMC for random triggers as a function of the HER current for a fixed LER current of 1.1 A, both for separated and colliding beams; a) the single crystal occupancy for thresholds of 1 MeV and b) the number of crystals with a deposited energy greater than 10 MeV. The solid curves represent a fit to the colliding beam data, the dashed curves indicate the sum of data recorded for single beams.

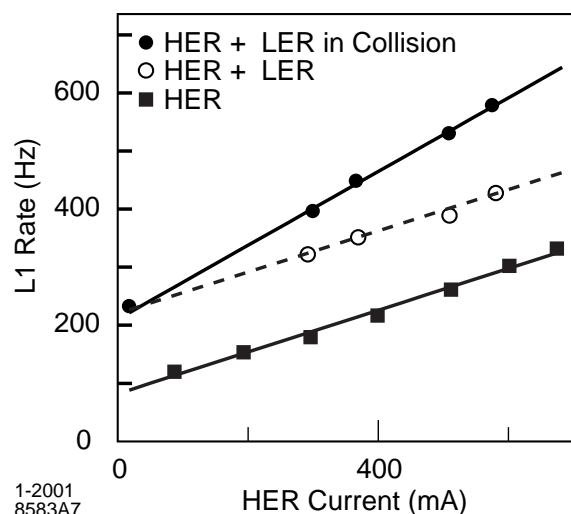


Figure 11. The L1 trigger rate as a function of the HER current for single beam only, for both beams, separated and colliding (with a LER current of 1.1 A).

are particles generated by interactions in vacuum flanges and the B1 magnets (see Figure XX in Chapter ??). This effect is most pronounced in the horizontal plane. At present, the HER background is twice as high as that of the LER, and the luminosity trigger contributes less than half of the combined LER and HER single beam triggers.

3.7. Summary and Outlook

Towards the end of the first year of data-taking, PEP-II routinely delivered beams close to design luminosity. Due to the very close cooperation with the PEP-II operations team, the machine-induced backgrounds have not been a major problem once stable conditions were established. The background monitoring and protection system has become a reliable and useful tool to safeguard the detector operation.

Currently planned upgrades are expected to raise the luminosity to $1.5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ within a few years. The single beam backgrounds will increase with beam currents and the luminosity background is projected to exceed, or at best

remain comparable to, the beam-gas contribution. Measures are being prepared to reduce the sources and the impact of machine-related background on *BABAR*, among them upgrades to the DCH power supply system and to the DIRC TDC electronics, the addition of localized shielding against shower debris (especially for the DIRC standoff-off box), new vacuum chambers, adjustable collimators, and additional pumping capacity in critical regions upstream of the interaction point.

With the expected increase in LER current and luminosity both the single-beam and the luminosity-generated L1 trigger rates will increase and are projected to exceed 2 kHz (see Figure 11). Therefore, the DCH trigger is being upgraded to improve the rejection of background tracks originating from outside the luminous region. In addition, the data acquisition and data processing capacity will need to be expanded to meet the demands of higher luminosity.

Overall, the occupancy in all systems, except the IFR, will probably reach levels that are likely to impact the resolution and reconstruction efficiency. For instance, the occupancy in the EMC is expected to more than double. Thus, beyond the relatively straight forward measures currently planned for *BABAR* system upgrades, detailed studies of the impact of higher occupancy will be necessary for all systems.

REFERENCES

1. F. Author et al., The PEP-II Storage Rings submitted to Nucl. Instr. and Methods (2001), SLAC-PUB8xxx.
2. J. Seeman et al., Status Report on PEP-II Performance, in *Proceedings of the 7th European Particle Accelerator Conference (EPAC 2000)*, Vienna, Austria (2000).
3. M. Sullivan, *B-Factory Interaction Region Designs*, in *Proceedings of the IEEE Particle Accelerator Conference (PAC97)*, Vancouver, B.C., Canada (1997), SLAC-PUB-7563.
4. S.E. Csorna et al., (CLEO Collaboration), Phys. Rev. 61 (2000) 111101.
5. T. Mattison et al., Background Measurements during PEP-II Commissioning in *Proceedings*

- 1357 of the *IEEE Particle Accelerator Conference*
 1358 (*PAC99*), New York, NY, USA (1999).
 1359 6. W. Kozanecki, *Nucl. Instr. and Methods A*
 1360 446 (2000) 59.
 1361 7. C. Hast et al., Report of the High-Luminosity
 1362 Background Task Force, *BABAR Note-522*
 1363 (2000).
 1364 8. T.I. Meyer et al., contribution to DPF 2000,
 1365 Meeting of the Division of Particles and Fields
 1366 of the American Physical Society, Columbus,
 1367 OH, USA (2000).
 1368 9. RADFET

1369 4. The Solenoid Magnet and Flux Return

1370 4.1. Overview

1371 The *BABAR* magnet system consists of a super-
 1372 conducting solenoid [1], a segmented flux return
 1373 and a field compensating coil. This system pro-
 1374 vides the magnetic field which enables charged
 1375 particle momentum measurement, serves as the
 1376 hadron absorber for hadron/muon separation,
 1377 and provides the overall structure and support for
 1378 the detector components. Figures 1 and 2 show
 1379 key components of the *BABAR* magnet system and
 1380 some of the nearby PEP-II magnets.

1381 The magnet coil cryostat is mounted inside the
 1382 hexagonal barrel flux return by four brackets on
 1383 each end. The end-doors are each split vertically
 1384 and mounted on skids that rest on the floor. To
 1385 permit access to the inner detector, the doors can
 1386 be raised and moved on rollers. At the interface
 1387 between the barrel and the end-doors, approxi-
 1388 mately 60% of the area is occupied by structural
 1389 steel and filler plates; the remaining space is re-
 1390 served for cables and utilities from the inner de-
 1391 tectors. A vertical triangular chase cut into the
 1392 backward end-doors contains the cryostat chim-
 1393 ney. Table 4 lists the principal parameters of the
 1394 magnet system. The total weight of the flux re-
 1395 turn is approximately 870 metric tons.

1396 To optimize the detector acceptance for un-
 1397 equal beam energies, the center of the *BABAR* de-
 1398 tector is offset by 370 mm in the electron beam
 1399 direction. The beam collision axis is rotated in
 1400 the horizontal plane by 20 mrad relative to axis
 1401 of the solenoid to minimize the perturbation of
 1402 the beams by the solenoid field. The principal
 1403 component of the magnetic field, B_z , lies along
 1404 the $+z$ axis; this is also the approximate direction
 1405 of the electron beam. The backward end-door is
 1406 tailored to accommodate the DIRC bar boxes and
 1407 to allow access to the drift chamber electronics.
 1408 Both ends allow space and adequate shielding for
 1409 the PEP-II quadrupoles.

1410 4.2. Magnetic Field Requirements and De- 1411 sign

1412 4.2.1. Field Requirements

1413 A solenoid magnetic field of 1.5 T was specified
 1414 in order to permit the desired momentum resolu-

Table 4
Magnet Parameters

Field Parameters		
Central Field	1.5	T
Max. Radial Field at Q1 and $r = 200$ mm	<0.25	T
Leakage into PEP-II	<0.01	T
Stored Energy	27	MJ
Steel Parameters		
Overall Barrel Length	4050	mm
Overall Door Thickness (incl. gaps for RPCs)	1149	mm
Overall Height	6545	mm
Plates in Barrel	18	
9	20	mm
4	30	mm
3	50	mm
2	100	mm
Plates in Each Door	18	
9	20	mm
4	30	mm
4	50	mm
1	100	mm
Main Coil Parameters		
Mean Diameter of Current Sheet	3060	mm
Current Sheet Length	3512	mm
Number of layers	2	
Operating Current	4596	A
Conductor Current Density	1.2	kA/mm ²
Inductance	2.57	H
Bucking Coil Parameters		
Inner Diameter	1906	mm
Operating Current	200	A
Number of Turns	140	
Cryostat Parameters		
Inner Diameter	???	
Radial Thickness	???	
Total Length	???	
Total Material	???	

tion for charged particles. To simplify track find-
ing and fast and accurate track fitting, the mag-
nitude of the magnetic field within the tracking
volume was required to be constant within a few
percent.

The magnet was designed to minimize dis-
turbance of operation of the PEP-II beam el-
ements. The samarium-cobalt B1 dipole and

Q1 quadrupole magnets are located inside the
solenoid as shown in Figure 1. Although these
magnets can sustain the high longitudinal field of
1.5 T, they cannot tolerate a large radial compo-
nent. Specifically, the field cannot exceed 0.25 T
at a radius $r = 200$ mm (assuming a linear depen-
dence of B_r on r) without degrading their field
properties due to partial demagnetization. The
conventional iron quadrupoles Q2, Q4, and Q5
are exposed to the solenoid stray fields. To avoid
excessive induced skew octupole components, the
stray field leaking into these beam elements is re-
quired to be less than 0.01 T, averaged over their
apertures.

4.2.2. Field Design Considerations

Due to unavoidable saturation of the steel near
the coil and the gap between the coil and the steel,
field non-uniformities arise. To control these non-
uniformities the current density of the coil is in-
creased at the ends relative to the center by re-
ducing the thickness of the aluminum stabilizer.
While the requirements on the radial field compo-
nent at Q1 inside the solenoid can be satisfac-
tively met at the forward end, the shape of the
backward plug is specifically designed to simul-
taneously control field uniformity and unwanted
radial components.

Sizable leakage of the magnetic flux is a prob-
lem, in particular at the backward end. A com-
pensating coil, mounted at the face of the back-
ward door and surrounding the DIRC strong sup-
port tube, is designed to reduce the stray field to
an acceptable level for the DIRC photomultipliers
and the PEP-II quadrupoles.

4.2.3. Magnetic Modeling

Extensive calculations of the magnetic field
were performed to develop the detailed design of
the flux return, the solenoid coil, and the com-
pensating coil. To cross-check the results of these
calculations the fields were modeled in detail in
two and three dimensions using commercial soft-
ware [2]. The shape of the hole in each end-door
was designed by optimizing various parameters,
such as the minimum steel thickness in areas of
saturation. The design of the hole in the forward
door was particularly delicate because the highly

1469 saturated steel is very close to the Q2 quadrupole. 1515
 1470 The multiple “finger” design of the hole was chosen 1516
 1471 to control the saturation of the steel. 1517

1472 Most of the design work was performed in two 1518
 1473 dimensions, but some three dimensional calculations 1519
 1474 were necessary to assure the accuracy of 1520
 1475 modeling the transitions between the end-doors 1521
 1476 and the barrel, the leakage of field into the PEP- 1522
 1477 II magnets, and the impact of that leakage on the 1523
 1478 multipole purity [3,4]. The computations of the 1524
 1479 leakage field were done for central field of 1.7 T 1525
 1480 instead of 1.5 T to provide some insurance against 1526
 1481 uncertainties in the modeling of complex steel 1527
 1482 shapes and the possible variations of the mag- 1528
 1483 netic properties of the steel. 1529
 1530
 1531
 1532

1484 4.3. Steel Flux Return

1485 4.3.1. Mechanical and Magnetic Forces

1486 The magnet flux return supports the detector 1534
 1487 components on the inside, but this load is not 1535
 1488 a major issue. Far greater demands are placed 1536
 1489 on the structural design by the magnetic forces
 1490 and the mechanical forces from a potential earth-
 1491 quake.

1492 Magnetic forces are of three kinds. First, there 1537
 1493 is a symmetric magnetic force on the end-doors 1538
 1494 which was taken into consideration in their de- 1539
 1495 sign and construction method. Second, there is 1540
 1496 an axial force on the solenoid due to the forward- 1541
 1497 backward asymmetry of the steel. Because the 1542
 1498 steel is highly saturated in places, the magnitude 1543
 1499 of the field asymmetry changes when the current 1544
 1500 is raised from zero and there is no position of the 1545
 1501 solenoid at which the force remains zero at all 1546
 1502 currents. Because it is important that this axial 1547
 1503 force should not change sign, which could cause 1548
 1504 a quench, the superconducting solenoid was de- 1549
 1505 liberately offset by 30 mm towards the forward 1550
 1506 door. This offset was chosen to accommodate a 1551
 1507 worst case scenario, including uncertainties in the 1552
 1508 calculation. Third, during a quench of the super- 1553
 1509 conducting coil, eddy currents in conducting com- 1554
 1510 ponents inside the magnetic volume could gener- 1555
 1511 ate sizable forces. These forces were analyzed 1556
 1512 for components such as the end-plates of the drift 1557
 1513 chamber and the electromagnetic calorimeter and 1558
 1514 were found not to be a problem. 1559
 1560

1515 4.3.2. Earthquake Considerations

1516 Because SLAC is located in an earthquake 1517
 1518 zone, considerable attention has been given to 1519
 1520 protecting the detector against severe damage 1521
 1522 from such an event. The entire detector is sup- 1523
 1524 ported on four earthquake isolators, one at each 1524
 1525 corner, which limit the component acceleration in 1525
 1526 the horizontal plane to 0.4 g. However, these iso- 1526
 1527 lators offer no protection in the vertical direction. 1527
 1528 Vertical ground accelerations of 0.6 g are consid- 1528
 1529 ered credible and actual component accelerations 1529
 1530 may be considerably larger due to resonances. By 1530
 1531 taking into account resonant frequencies and the 1531
 1532 expected frequency spectra of earthquakes, the 1532
 1533 magnet and all detector components have been 1533
 1534 designed to survive these accelerations without 1534
 1535 serious damage. Because the magnet is isolated 1535
 1536 from the ground moving beneath it, worst case 1536
 1537 clearances to external components, e.g. PEP-II 1537
 1538 components, are provided. It is expected that 1538
 1539 even during a major earthquake, damage would 1539
 1540 be modest. 1540
 1541
 1542
 1543
 1544
 1545
 1546
 1547
 1548
 1549
 1550
 1551

1537 4.3.3. Fabrication

1538 The flux return was fabricated [5] from draw- 1538
 1539 ings prepared by the BABAR engineering team. A 1539
 1540 primary concern was the magnetic properties of 1540
 1541 the steel. The need for a high saturation field 1541
 1542 dictated the choice of a low carbon steel, speci- 1542
 1543 fied by its chemical content (close to AISI 1006). 1543
 1544 The manufacturer supplied sample steel for crit- 1544
 1545 ical magnetic measurements and approval. The 1545
 1546 availability of very large tools at the factory made 1546
 1547 it possible to machine the entire face of each end 1547
 1548 of the assembled barrel, thus assuring a good fit 1548
 1549 of the end-doors. The entire flux return was as- 1549
 1550 sembled at the factory, measured mechanically, 1550
 1551 and inspected before disassembly for shipment. 1551

1552 4.4. Magnet Coils

1553 The design of the superconducting solenoid 1553
 1554 is conservative and follows previous experience. 1554
 1555 The superconducting material is composed of 1555
 1556 niobium-titanium (46.5% by weight Nb) fila- 1556
 1557 ments, each less than 40 μm in diameter. These 1557
 1558 filaments are then wound into 0.8 mm strands, 1558
 1559 16 of which are then formed into *Rutherford* 1559
 1560 *cable* measuring 1.4 x 6.4 mm. The final 1560

conductor [6] consists of Rutherford cable co-extruded with pure aluminum stabilizer measuring 4.93 x 20.0 mm for use on the outer, high current density portion of the solenoid, and 8.49 x 20.0 mm for the central, lower current density portion. The conductor is covered in an insulating dry wrap fiberglass cloth vacuum impregnated with epoxy. The conductor has a total length of 10.3 km.

The solenoid is indirectly cooled to an operating point of 4.5 K using a thermo-syphon technique. Liquid helium [7] is circulated in channels welded to the solenoid support cylinder. Liquid helium and cold gas circulate between the solenoid, its shields, the liquefier/refrigerator and a 4000 ℓ storage dewar via 60 m of coaxial, gas-screened, flexible transfer line. The solenoid coil and its cryostat were fabricated [8] to drawings prepared by the *BABAR* engineering team. Before shipment [9], the fully assembled solenoid was cooled to operating temperature and tested with currents of up to 1000 A, limited by coil forces in the absence of the iron flux return.

To reduce the leakage fields into the PEP-II components and the DIRC photomultipliers, an additional external compensating coil is installed. This is a conventional water cooled copper coil consisting of 10 layers. Although the nominal operating current is 200 A, a current of up to 575 A may be needed to demagnetize the DIRC shield.

To optimally control the stray fields and avoid a magnetization of the DIRC magnetic shield, the currents in the solenoid and the compensating coil are ramped together under computer control. High precision transducers are used to measure the currents and provide the feedback signals to the power supplies. The values of the currents are recorded in the *BABAR* database.

4.5. Magnetic Field Map

The goal of the magnetic field mapping and subsequent corrections was to determine the magnetic field in the tracking volume to a precision of 0.2 mT.

4.5.1. Mapping Procedure

A field mapping device was built specifically for the *BABAR* magnet based on a design concept de-

veloped at Fermilab [10]. The magnetic field sensors were mounted on a “propeller” at the end of a long cantilevered spindle which reached through the hole in the forward end-door. The spindle in turn rode on a carriage which moved on precision-aligned rails. The propeller rotated to sample the magnetic volume in ϕ , and the carriage moved along its axis to cover z . Measurements were obtained from five sets of B_r and B_z and two B_ϕ Hall probes, all of which were mounted on a plate at different radial positions. This plate was attached to the propeller and its position could be changed to cover the desired range in the radial distance r from the axis. Precision optical alignment tools were used to determine the position of the sensors transverse to the z axis.

The B_r and B_z probes were two-element devices with a short term precision of 0.01%, the B_ϕ probes were single element devices with a precision of 0.1% [11]. In addition to the Hall probes, an NMR probe [12] was mounted at a radius of 89 mm on the propeller to provide a very precise field reference near the z axis as a function of z for $|z| < 1000$ mm, where $z = 0$ at the magnet center. The NMR measurements set the absolute scale of the magnetic field.

The magnetic field was mapped at the nominal central operating field of 1.5 T, as well as at 1.0 T. Measurements were recorded in 100 mm intervals from -1800 to $+1800$ mm in z , and in 24 azimuthal positions spaced by 15° for each of three different positions of the Hall probe plate. Thus for each z and ϕ position, the components B_r and B_z were measured at 13 radii from 130 mm to 1255 mm and B_ϕ at six radii between 505 mm and 1180 mm.

The field map was parameterized in terms of a polynomial of degree up to 40 in r and z plus additional terms to account for expected perturbations [13]. The fit reproduced the measurements to within an average deviation of 0.2 mT throughout the tracking volume. The fitting procedure also served as a means of detecting and removing questionable measurements.

4.5.2. Perturbations to the Field Map

During the mapping process, the permanent magnet dipoles (B1) and quadrupoles (Q1) were

1654 not yet installed. Their presence inside the
 1655 solenoid results in field perturbations of two
 1656 kinds. The first is due to the fringe fields of the
 1657 B1 and Q1 permanent magnets, and of the dipole
 1658 and quadrupole trim coils mounted on Q1. The
 1659 B1 field strength reaches a maximum of ≈ 20 mT
 1660 close to the surface of the B1 casing and decreases
 1661 rapidly with increasing radius. The fields associ-
 1662 ated with the trim coils were measured and pa-
 1663 rameterized prior to installation; they are essen-
 1664 tially dipole in character.

1665 The second field perturbation is due to the per-
 1666 meability of the permanent magnet material. Sin-
 1667 tered samarium-cobalt has a relative permeabil-
 1668 ity of 1.11 to 1.13 in the z direction, and as a
 1669 result the solenoid field is modified significantly.
 1670 Probes between the B1 and Q1 magnets at a ra-
 1671 dius of about 190 mm measure the effect of the
 1672 permeability. The field perturbation is obtained
 1673 from a two-dimensional, finite element analysis
 1674 which reproduces the r and z dependence of B_r
 1675 and B_z . The induced magnetization increases B_z
 1676 by about 9 mT at the interaction point, the effect
 1677 decreases slowly with increasing radius.

1678 4.5.3. Field Quality

1679 To illustrate the quality of magnetic field, Fig-
 1680 ure 12 shows the field components B_z and B_r as
 1681 a function of z for various radial distances r . In
 1682 the tracking volume the field is very uniform, the
 1683 B_ϕ component does not exceed 1 mT. The varia-
 1684 tion of the bend field, i.e. the field transverse
 1685 to the trajectory, along the path of a high mo-
 1686 mentum track is at most 2.5% from maximum to
 1687 minimum within the tracking region, as shown in
 1688 Figure 13.

1689 4.5.4. Field Computation

1690 In order to reduce the computation of the mag-
 1691 netic field for track reconstruction and momen-
 1692 tum determination, the field values averaged over
 1693 azimuth are stored in a grid of $r - z$ space points
 1694 spanning the volume interior to the cryostat. Lo-
 1695 cal values are obtained by interpolation. Within
 1696 the volume of the SVT, a linear interpolation is
 1697 performed in a 20 mm grid; elsewhere the in-
 1698 terpolation is quadratic in a 50 mm grid. Az-
 1699 imuthal dependence is parameterized by means

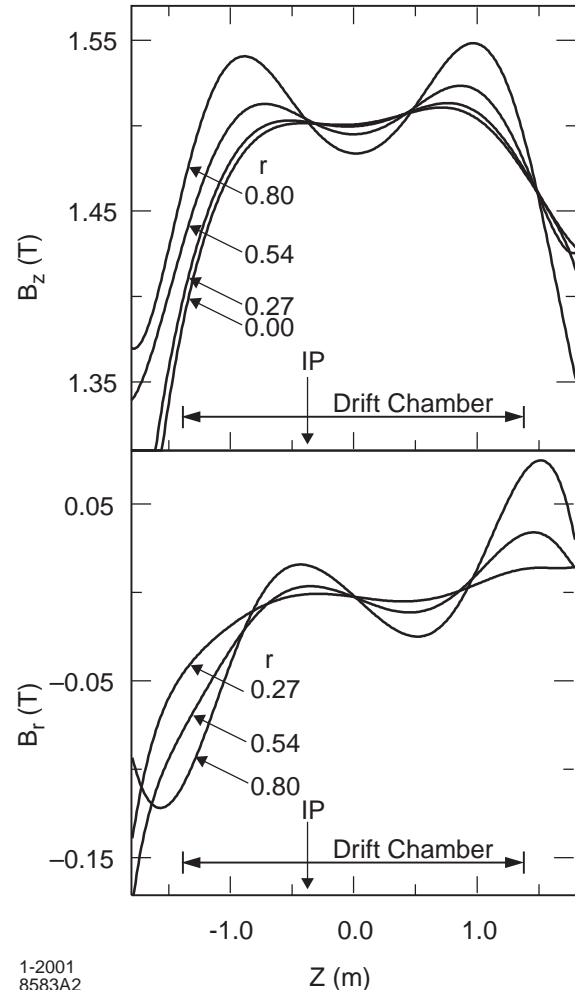


Figure 12. The magnetic field components B_z and B_r as a function of z for various radial distances r (in m). The extent of the drift chamber and the location of the interaction point (IP) are indicated.

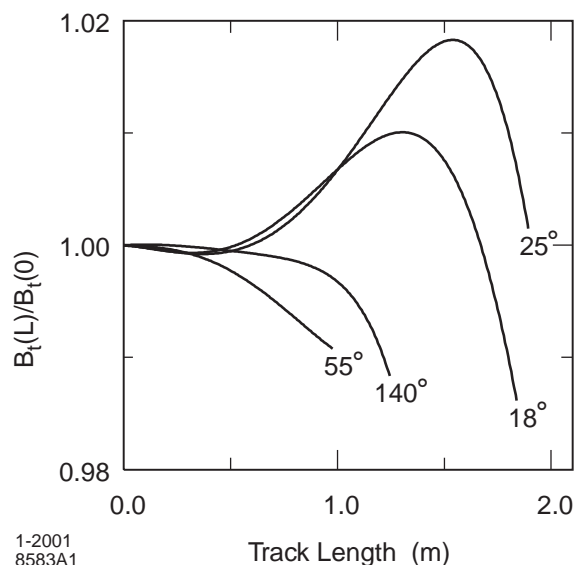


Figure 13. Relative magnitude of magnetic field transverse to a high momentum track as a function of track length from the IP for various polar angles (in degrees). The data are normalized to the field at the origin.

of a Fourier expansion at each $r - z$ point. The Fourier coefficients at the point of interest are obtained by interpolation on the $r - z$ grid, and the average field value is corrected using the resulting Fourier series.

4.6. Summary

Since its successful commissioning, the magnet system has performed without problems. There have been no spontaneous quenches of the superconducting solenoid. In the tracking region the magnetic field meets specifications, both in magnitude and uniformity. The field compensation and magnetic shielding work well for the DIRC photomultiplier array and the external quadrupoles.

REFERENCES

1. IEEE Transactions on Applied Superconductivity, 9 #2 (1999) 847.

2. Opera-2D, Vector Fields, Inc., Aurora, Illinois 60505 (USA).
ANSYS by ANSYS Inc., Canonsburg, PA 15317 (USA).
Mermaid (©1994) by Sim Limited, Novosibirsk (Russia).
3. A. Onuchin, et al., Magnetic Field Calculation in the BABAR Detector, BABAR Note 344 (1996).
4. L. Keller, et al., Magnetic Field Calculation in the BABAR Detector, BABAR Note 370 (1997).
5. Kawasaki Heavy Industries (KHI), Kobe (Japan).
6. Europa Metali & Cortaillod (Switzerland).
7. Solenoid cool-down and cryogenic Helium is supplied by a modified Linde TCF-200 liquefier/refrigerator.
8. Ansaldo Energia, Genova (Italy).
9. The solenoid was shipped from Genova on a C5-B transport plane of the US Air Force.
10. C. Newman-Holmes, E.E. Schmidt, and R. Yamada, Nucl. Instr. and Meth. A 274 (1989) 443.
11. Sentron model 2MR-4A/3B-14B25-20 (2-element) and, AMR-3B-14B25-20 (1-element) Hall Probes, GMW Associates, San Carlos, CA (USA).
12. Metrolab model PT 2025 Telsameter with model 1060 NMR probe, Metrolab Instruments, SA, CH-1228, Geneva (Switzerland).
13. A. Boyaraki, et al., "Field Measurements in the BABAR Solenoid" BABAR Note 514 (2000).

5. Silicon Vertex Tracker

5.1. Goals and Design Requirements

The silicon vertex tracker (SVT) has been designed to provide precise reconstruction of charged particle trajectories and decay vertices near the interaction region. It forms one of the two detectors responsible for charged particle tracking in *BABAR*, the other being the drift chamber (DCH). The SVT is the critical detector for the measurement of time-dependent CP asymmetries via the measurement of B^0 meson decay vertices. The design choices were driven primarily by direct requirements from physics measurements and constraints imposed by the PEP-II interaction region and *BABAR* experiment. In this chapter we will discuss the mechanical and electronic design of the SVT, with some discussion of the point resolution per layer and dE/dx performance. We discuss the tracking performance and efficiency of the SVT alone and in combination with the DCH, in Section 9.

5.1.1. Requirements and Constraints

Physics requirements are derived from the decay topologies of B mesons in the laboratory frame. To avoid significant impact on the CP asymmetry measurement ($< 10\%$ with respect to perfect vertex reconstruction) the mean spatial resolution on each B decay vertex along the z -axis must be better than $80 \mu\text{m}$ [1]. The required resolution in the $x - y$ plane arises from the need to reconstruct final states in B decays as well as in τ and charm decays. For example, in decays of the type $B^0 \rightarrow D^+ D^-$ separating the two D vertices is important. The distance between the two D 's in the $x - y$ plane for this decay is typically $\sim 275 \mu\text{m}$. Hence the SVT needs to provide $x - y$ resolution of order $\sim 100 \mu\text{m}$.

Many of the decay products of B mesons are at low p_t . The SVT must provide stand-alone tracking for particles with transverse momentum less than $120 \text{ MeV}/c$, the minimum that can be reliably measured in the DCH alone. This feature is fundamental for the identification of slow pions from D^* meson decays: a tracking efficiency of 70% or more is desirable for tracks with a transverse momentum in the range $50\text{--}120 \text{ MeV}/c$.

This also means that the material traversed by particles must be minimized.

The stand-alone tracking capability and the need to link SVT tracks to the DCH were crucial in choosing the number of layers. Beyond the stand-alone tracking capability, the SVT provides the best measurement of track angles at the IP, which is required to achieve design resolution for the Cherenkov angle.

Additional constraints are imposed by the storage rings and the environment of the *BABAR* detector. The SVT is located inside the $\sim 4.5 \text{ m}$ long support tube, that extends all the way through the detector. To maximize the angular coverage, the SVT must extend down to 350 mrad (17.2°) in polar angle from the beamline in the forward direction. The region at smaller polar angles is occupied by the B1 permanent magnets. In the backward direction, it is sufficient to extend the SVT sensitive area down to 30° .

The SVT must withstand 2 MRad of ionizing radiation. A radiation monitoring system capable of aborting the beams is required. The expected radiation dose is 240 kRad/yr in the horizontal plane immediately outside the beam pipe (where the highest radiation is concentrated), and 33 kRad/yr on average otherwise.

The SVT is inaccessible during normal detector operations. Hence, reliability and robustness are essential: all components of the SVT inside the support tube should have long mean-time-to-failure, because the time needed for any replacement is estimated to be 4-5 months. Redundancies are built in whenever possible and practical.

Because the SVT is physically well insulated from the external environment, the SVT is cooled to remove the heat generated by the electronics or radiated by the water cooled beam pipe. In addition, it operates in the 1.5 T magnetic field.

To achieve the position resolution necessary to carry out physics analyses, the relative position of the individual silicon sensors should be stable over long time periods. The assembly allows for relative motion of the support structures with respect to the B1 magnets. This feature is also necessary to sustain an earthquake of moderate intensity.

These requirements and constraints have led to

1844 the choice of a SVT made of five layers of double-
 1845 sided silicon strip sensors. To fulfill our physics
 1846 requirements, the spatial resolution, for perpen-
 1847 dicular tracks, must be 10-15 μm in the three
 1848 inner layers and about 40 μm in the two outer
 1849 layers. The inner three layers perform the impact
 1850 parameter measurements, while the outer layers
 1851 are necessary for pattern recognition and low p_t
 1852 tracking.

1853 5.2. SVT Layout

1854 The five layers of double-sided silicon strip sen-
 1855 sors, which form the SVT detector, are organized
 1856 in 6, 6, 6, 16, and 18 modules, respectively: a pho-
 1857 tograph is shown in Figure 14. The strips on the
 1858 two sides are oriented orthogonally to each other:
 1859 the ϕ measuring strips (“ ϕ strips”) run parallel to
 1860 the beam and the z measuring strips (“ z strips”)
 1861 are oriented transversely to the beam axis. The
 1862 modules of the inner 3 layers are straight, while
 1863 the modules of layers 4 and 5 are arch-shaped (Fig-
 1864 ures 15 and 16). This arch design was cho-

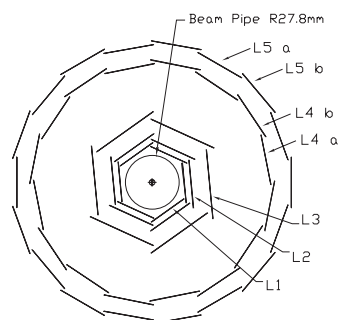


Figure 16. Schematic view of SVT: transverse section.

1869 shown in Figure 17. The modules are divided
 1870 electrically into two half-modules, which are read
 out at the ends.

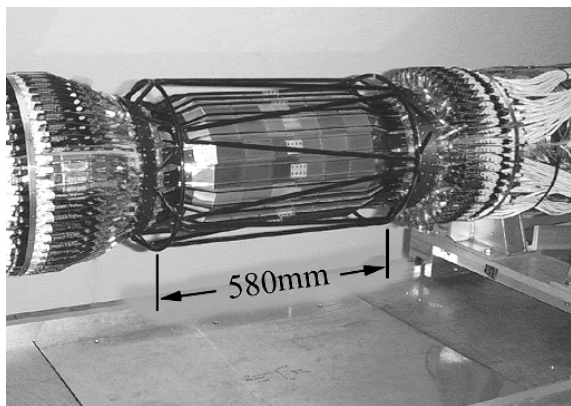


Figure 14. Fully assembled Silicon Vertex Tracker. The silicon sensors of the outer layer are visible, as is the carbon-fiber space frame (black structure) that surrounds the silicon.

1864 sen to minimize the amount of silicon required to
 1865 cover the solid angle, while increasing the crossing
 1866 angle for particles near the edges of acceptance.
 1867 A photograph of an outer layer arch module is
 1868

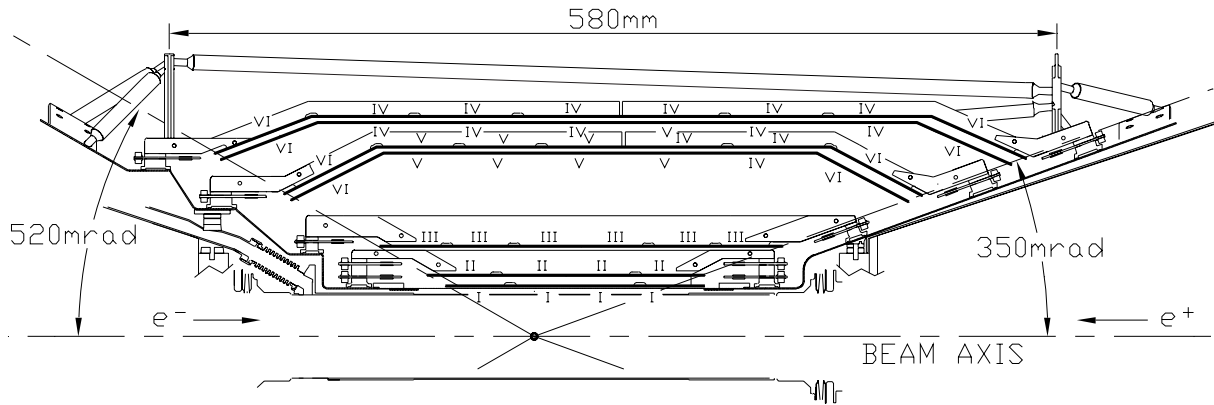


Figure 15. Schematic view of SVT: longitudinal section. The roman numerals label the six different types of sensors.



Figure 17. Photograph of an SVT arch module in an assembly jig.

1872 To satisfy the different geometrical require-
 1873 ments of the five SVT layers, five different sensor
 1874 shapes are required to assemble the planar
 1875 sections of the layers. The smallest detectors
 1876 are $48 \times 40 \text{ mm}^2$, and the largest are $55 \times 52 \text{ mm}^2$.
 1877 Two identical trapezoidal sensors are added (one
 1878 each at the forward and backward ends) to form
 1879 the arch modules. The half-modules are given
 1880 mechanical stiffness by means of two carbon
 1881 fiber/kevlar ribs, which are visible in Figure 17.
 1882 The ϕ strips of sensors in the same half-module
 1883 are electrically connected with wire bonds to form
 1884 a single readout strip. This results in a total strip
 1885 length up to 14 cm (24 cm) in the inner (outer)
 1886 layers.

1887 The signals from the z strips are brought to
 1888 the readout electronics using fanout circuits con-
 1889 sisting of conducting traces on a thin ($50 \mu\text{m}$)
 1890 insulating Upilex [2] substrate. For the inner-
 1891 most three layers, each z strip is connected to
 1892 its own preamplifier channel, while in layers 4
 1893 and 5 the number of z strips on a half module
 1894 exceeds the number of electronics channels avail-
 1895 able, requiring that two z strips on different de-
 1896 tectors are electrically connected (ganged) to a
 1897 single electronics channel. The length of a z strip
 1898 is about 5 cm (no ganging) or 10 cm (two strips
 1899 connected). The ganging introduces an ambigu-
 1900 ity on the z coordinate measurement, which must

be resolved in the pattern recognition procedure. The total number of readout channels is approximately 150,000.

The inner modules are tilted in ϕ by 5° , allowing an overlap region between adjacent modules, a feature that is very useful for the alignment. The outer modules cannot be tilted, because of the arch geometry. To avoid gaps and to have a suitable overlap in ϕ , layers 4 and 5 are divided into two sub-layers (4a, 4b, 5a, 5b) placed at slightly different radii. The relevant geometrical parameters of each layer are summarized in Table 5.

Table 5

Geometric parameters for each layer and readout plan of the SVT. “Floating strips” refers to the number of strips between readout strips. Note: parts of the ϕ sides of layers 1 and 2 are bonded at $100\ \mu\text{m}$ and $110\ \mu\text{m}$ pitch, respectively, with one floating strip. Strip length of z -strips for layers 4 and 5 takes includes ganging. The radial range for layers 4 and 5 includes the radial extent of the arched sections.

Layer/ view	Radius (cm)	Readout pitch (μm)	Floating strips	Strip length (mm)
1 z	3.2	100	1	40
1 ϕ	3.2	50-100	0-1	82
2 z	4.0	100	1	48
2 ϕ	4.0	55-110	0-1	88
3 z	5.4	100	1	70
3 ϕ	5.4	110	1	128
4 z	9.1-12.7	210	1	104
4 ϕ	9.1-12.7	100	1	224
5 z	11.4-14.4	210	1	104
5 ϕ	11.4-14.4	100	1	265

In order to minimize the material in the detector acceptance region, the readout electronics are mounted entirely outside the active detector volume. The forward electronics must be mounted in the 1 cm space between the 350 mrad stay-clear space and B1 magnet. This implies that the hybrids carrying the front-end chip must be positioned at an angle of 350 mrad relative to the sensor for the inner layers, and at an even larger

angle for the outer ones (Figure 15). In the backward direction the available space is larger and the inner layer electronics can be placed in the sensor plane, allowing a simplified assembly procedure.

The module assembly and the mechanics are quite complicated, especially for the arch modules, and are described in detail elsewhere [3]. The SVT support structure (Figure 14) is a rigid body made from two carbon-fiber cones, connected by a “space-frame”, also made of carbon-fiber epoxy laminate.

An optical survey of the SVT on its assembly jig indicated that the global error in placement of the sensors with respect to design was $\sim 200\ \mu\text{m}$, FWHM. Subsequently the detector was disassembled and shipped to SLAC, where it was re-assembled on the IR magnets. The SVT is attached to the B1 magnets by a set of gimbal rings, in such a way as to allow for relative motion of the two B1 magnets while fixing the position of the SVT relative to the forward B1 and the orientation relative to the axis of both B1 dipoles. The support tube structure is mounted on the PEP-II accelerator supports, independently *BABAR*, leading to the possible movements between the SVT and the rest of *BABAR*. Precise position monitoring of the beam interaction point is necessary, this is described in section 5.4.

The total active silicon area is $0.96\ \text{m}^2$ and the material traversed by particles is $\sim 4\%$ of a radiation length (see Section 2). The geometrical acceptance of SVT is 92% of the solid angle in the center-of-mass system.

5.3. SVT Components

A block diagram of SVT components is shown in Figure 18. The basic components of the detector are the silicon sensors, the fanout circuits, the front end electronics and the data transmission system. Each of these components is discussed below.

5.3.1. Silicon sensors

The SVT sensors [4] are made of $300\ \mu\text{m}$ thick double-sided silicon strip devices. They were designed at INFN Pisa and Trieste (Italy) and fabricated commercially [5]. They are built on high-

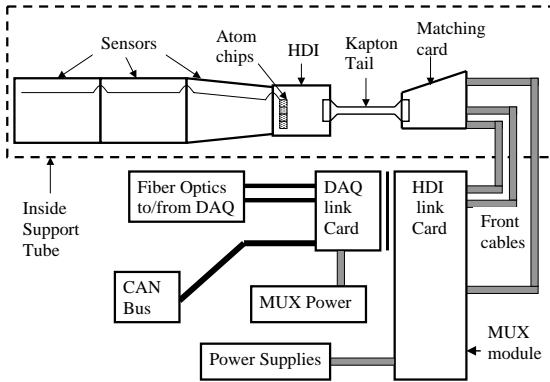


Figure 18. Schematic block diagram showing the different components of the SVT.

1969 resistivity (6-15 k Ω -cm) n-type substrates with
 1970 p⁺ strips and n⁺ strips on the two opposite sides.
 1971 The insulation of the n⁺ strips is provided by in-
 1972 dividual p-stops, so as to achieve an inter-strip
 1973 resistance greater than 100 M Ω at operating bias
 1974 voltage, normally about 10 V above the deple-
 1975 tion voltage. Typical depletion voltages are in
 1976 the range 25-35 V. On both sides the strips are
 1977 biased with polysilicon resistors (4-20 M Ω) to
 1978 ensure the required radiation hardness, keeping
 1979 the voltage drop across resistors and the parallel
 1980 noise as low as possible. Strips are AC-coupled
 1981 to electronics via integrated decoupling capacitors,
 1982 whose capacitance depends on the sensor shape,
 1983 but is always greater than 14 pF/cm. The sen-
 1984 sors were designed to maximize the active area,
 1985 which extends to within 0.7 mm of the phys-
 1986 ical edges. Another design goal was to control
 1987 the inter-strip capacitance: values between 0.7
 1988 pF/cm and 1.1 pF/cm were obtained for the var-
 1989 ious sensor shapes. To achieve the required spatial
 1990 resolution, while keeping the number of readout
 1991 channels as low as possible, most of the modules
 1992 have a floating strip between two readout strips.

1993
 1994 The leakage currents, because of the excellent
 1995 performance of the manufacturing process, were
 1996 as low as 50 nA/cm² on average, measured at

Table 6

Electrical parameters of the SVT, shown for the different layers and views. C_{input} refers to the total input capacitance, R_{series} is the series resistance. The amplifier peaking time is 200 ns for layers 1-3 and 400 ns for layers 4-5.

Layer/ view	C_{input} (pF)	R_{series} (Ω)	Noise, calc. (elec)	meas. (elec)
1 z	6.0	40.	550	880
1 ϕ	17.2	164.	990	1200
2 z	7.2	48.	600	970
2 ϕ	18.4	158.	1030	1240
3 z	10.5	70.	700	1180
3 ϕ	26.8	230.	1470	1440
4 z	16.6	104.	870	1210
4 ϕ	33.6	224.	1380	1350
5 z	16.6	104.	870	1200
5 ϕ	39.7	265.	1580	1600

1997 10 V above depletion voltage. The silicon sen-
 1998 sor parameters have been measured after irra-
 1999 diation with ⁶⁰Co sources. Apart from an in-
 2000 crease in the inter-strip capacitance of about
 2001 12% during the first 100 kRad, the main effect
 2002 was an increase of the leakage current by 0.7
 2003 μ A/cm²/MRad. However, in a radiation test per-
 2004 formed in a 1 GeV electron beam, an increase in
 2005 leakage current of about 2 μ A/cm²/MRad, and a
 2006 significant shift in the depletion voltage, depen-
 2007 dent on the initial dopant concentration, were ob-
 2008 served. A shift of about 8-10 V was seen for irra-
 2009 diation corresponding to a dose of approximately
 2010 1 MRad. These observations indicate significant
 2011 bulk damage caused by energetic electrons. Due
 2012 to the change in depletion voltage, the SVT sen-
 2013 sors could undergo type inversion after about 1-
 2014 3 MRad. Preliminary tests show that the sen-
 2015 sors continue to function after type inversion [6].
 2016 Studies of the behavior of SVT modules as a func-
 2017 tion of radiation dose continue.

5.3.2. Fanout circuits

2018 The fanout circuits, which route the signals
 2019 from the strips to the electronics, have been de-
 2020 signed to minimize the series resistance and the
 2021 inter-strip capacitance. As described in [7], a
 2022

trace on the fanout has a series resistance about 1.6 Ω /cm, an inter-strip resistance > 20 M Ω , and an inter-strip capacitance < 0.5 pF/cm. The electrical parameters of the final assembly of sensors and fanouts (referred to as Detector Fanout Assemblies or DFAs) are summarized in Table 6. Due to the different strip lengths, there are large differences between the inner and the outer layers. Smaller differences are also present between the forward and backward halves of the module, that are of different lengths.

5.3.3. Front end electronics

The electrical parameters of a DFA and the general *BABAR* requirements are the basic inputs that drove the design of the SVT front-end IC: the ATOM (A Time-Over-Threshold Machine). In particular, the front-end IC had to cope with the following requirements:

- signal to noise ratio greater than 15 for minimum ionizing particle (MIP) signals for all modules;
- signals from all hit strips must be retained, in order to improve the spatial resolution through interpolation, while keeping the number of transmitted hits as low as possible. A ‘hit’ means a deposited charge greater than 0.95 fC, corresponding to 0.25 MIP (a MIP is the average charge deposited by a minimum ionizing particle) ;
- the amplifier must be sensitive to both negative and positive charge;
- the peaking time must be programmable, with a minimum of 100 ns (in layers 1 and 2, because of the high occupancy), up to 400 ns (outer layers, with high capacitance)
- capability to accept random triggers with a latency up to 11.5 μ s and a programmable jitter up to ± 1 μ s, without dead time;
- radiation hardness greater than 2.5 MRad;
- small dimensions: 128 channels in a 6.2 mm wide chip.

These requirements are fully satisfied by the ATOM chip [8], which is depicted schematically in Figure 19. The linear analog section consists

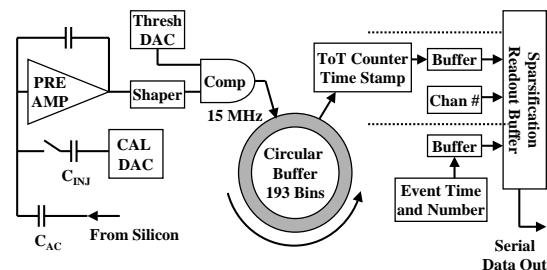


Figure 19. Schematic diagram of the ATOM front end IC.

of a charge-sensitive preamplifier followed by a shaper. Gains of 200 mV/fC (low) or 300 mV/fC (high) may be selected. The channel gains on a IC are uniform to 5 mV/fC. Signals are presented to a programmable-threshold comparator, designed so that the output width of the pulse (time over threshold or ToT) quasi-logarithmic function of collected charge. This output is sampled at 30 MHz and stored in a 193 location buffer. Upon receipt of a first level trigger, the time and ToT is retrieved from this latency buffer, sparsified, and stored in a four event buffer. Upon the receipt of a L1 accept command from the data acquisition system, the output data (the 4 bits for the ToT, 5 bits for the time stamp, and 7 bits for the strip address) are formatted, serialized, and delivered. The IC also contains a test charge injection circuit. The typical noise behavior of the ATOM, as described by the equivalent noise charge (ENC) of the linear analog section is given in Table 7.

The average noise for the various module types is shown in Table 6. Given that shot noise due to sensor leakage current is negligible, the expected noise may be calculated from the parameters of Tables 6 and 7. The results of such a calculation are also shown in Table 6. The maximum average noise is 1,600 electrons, leading to a signal to noise ratio greater than 15.

Table 7
 ATOM chip Equivalent Noise Charge (ENC) parameters at different peaking times

ATOM peaking time	Noise Charge at zero Capacitance	Noise slope
100 ns	$380 e^-$	$40.9 e^-/\text{pF}$
200 ns	$280 e^-$	$33.9 e^-/\text{pF}$
400 ns	$220 e^-$	$25.4 e^-/\text{pF}$

The power consumption of the IC is about 4.5 mW/channel. Radiation hardness was checked up to 2.4 MRad of ^{60}Co radiation. At that dose, the gain decreased 20%, and the noise increased less than 15%.

The ATOM IC's are mounted on thick-film double-sided hybrid circuits (known as High Density Interconnects or HDIs) based on an aluminum-nitride substrate with high thermal conductivity. The electronics are powered through a floating power supply system, in such a way as to guarantee a small voltage drop (< 1 V) across the detector decoupling capacitors.

5.3.4. Data transmission

The digitized signals are transmitted from the ATOM chips through a thin kapton cable to the matching cards, from where they are routed to more conventional cables. Just outside the detector signals are multiplexed by the MUX modules, converted into optical signals and transmitted to the ROMs. The MUX modules also receive digital signals from the DAQ via a fiber optical connection. The SVT is connected to the BABAR online detector control and monitoring system via the industry standard CAN bus. Details on SVT data transmission system and DAQ can be found in [10,11]. Power to SVT modules (silicon sensor bias voltage and ATOM low voltages) is provided by a CAEN A522 power supply system [12].

5.4. Monitoring and calibration

To identify immediately any operational problems, the SVT is integrated in the control and monitoring system (see Section 14). Major concerns for SVT monitoring are temperature and humidity, mechanical position and radiation dose.

5.4.1. Temperature and humidity monitors

The total power dissipation of the SVT modules is about 350 W, mainly dissipated in the ATOM chip. External cooling is provided by chilled water at 8°C. In addition, humidity is reduced by a stream of dry nitrogen in the support tube.

Since excessive temperature can permanently damage the front-end electronics, temperature monitoring is very important to the safe operation of the SVT. Thermistors are located on the HDIs (for the measurements of front-end electronics temperature), around the SVT, along the cooling systems and in the electronics (MUX) crates. The absolute temperatures are monitored to 0.2°C and relative changes of 0.1°C. Additionally, a series of humidity sensors are employed to monitor the performance of the dry nitrogen system. The temperature and humidity monitors also serve as an interlock to the HDI power supplies.

5.4.2. Position monitoring sensors

The relative alignment of the two tracking systems (DCH and SVT) is monitored with a precision equal to the spatial resolution of the outermost SVT layer (40 μm). This is done on an hourly basis with charged particles from Bhabha and muon pairs from $e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-$ events with a precision of approximately 10 μm . To detect sudden unexpected movements, it is important to monitor the SVT position on a much faster time scale. This is achieved by a system of capacitive sensors that measure the position of the SVT with respect to the PEP-II B1 magnets and the position of the support tube with respect to the drift chamber.

An example of the understanding that can be achieved by the monitoring systems is given in Figure 20. The relative DCH-SVT horizontal position during a period of 6 days, as measured by the capacitive sensors, is shown. This curve is compared with the temperature, measured by the thermistors around the SVT: a correlation is evident, thus explaining the diurnal movement. The displacement measurement performed by the capacitive sensors is also confirmed by the measurements obtained with Bhabha events and $\mu^+\mu^-$

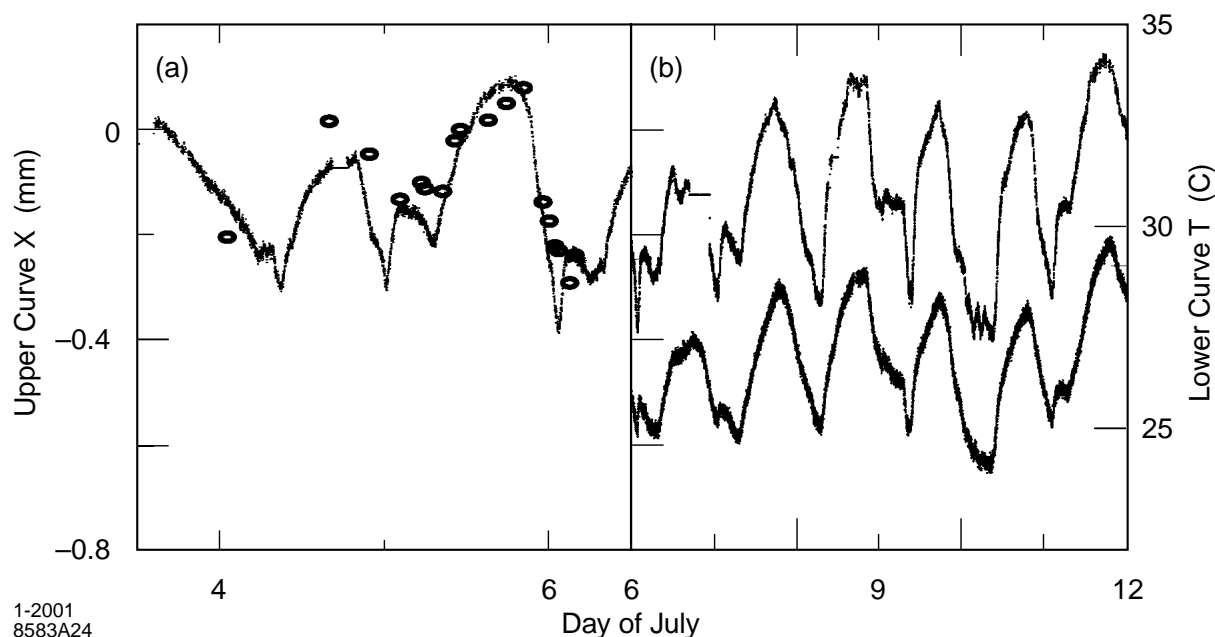


Figure 20. (a) Horizontal motion measured with the capacitive sensors (curve) between the DCH and the support tube and mean x coordinate of the collision point (circles) measured with e^+e^- and $\mu^+\mu^-$ events for a three day period in July 1999. An arbitrary offset and scale has been applied to the beamspot data. (b) Diurnal horizontal motion of the drift chamber relative to the SVT as measured with the capacitive sensors (upper curve) and temperature near the detector (lower curve) as a function of time, for six days in July 1999.

2177 pairs.

2178 5.4.3. Radiation monitors

2179 Radiation monitoring is extremely important
2180 to ensure the SVT does not exceed its radiation
2181 budget, which could cause permanent damage to
2182 the device. To date, the measured radiation ab-
2183 sorbed by the SVT is well within the allowed bud-
2184 get.

2185 The monitoring of radiation dose to the SVT
2186 is discussed in detail in Section 3.

2187 5.4.4. Calibrations

2188 Once a day, and each time the SVT configu-
2189 ration has changed, calibrations are performed in
2190 absence of circulating beams. All electronic chan-
2191 nels are tested with pulses through test capaci-
2192 tors, for different values of the injected charge.

2193 Gains, thresholds and electronic noise are mea-
2194 sured, and defective channels are identified. The
2195 calibration results have proved very stable and re-
2196 peatable. The main variation in time is the occa-
2197 sional discovery of a new defective channel. The
2198 calibration procedures have also been very useful
2199 for monitoring noise sources external to the SVT.

2200 5.4.5. Defects

2201 Due to a series of minor mishaps incurred dur-
2202 ing the installation of the SVT, 9 out of 208
2203 readout sections (each corresponding to one side
2204 of a half-module) were damaged and are cur-
2205 rently not functioning. There is no single fail-
2206 ure mode, but several causes: defective connec-
2207 tors, mis-handling during installation and not-
2208 fully-understood problems on the front-end elec-
2209 tronics hybrid. There has been no module failure

2210 due to radiation damage. It should be noted that
 2211 due to the redundancy afforded by the five layers
 2212 of the SVT, the presence of the defective modules
 2213 has minimal impact on physics analyses.

2214 In addition, there are individual channel de-
 2215 fects, of various types, at a level of about 1%. Cal-
 2216 ibrations have revealed an increase in the num-
 2217 ber of defective channels at a rate of less than
 2218 0.2%/year.

2219 5.5. Data analysis and performance

2220 This section describes the clustering of the raw
 2221 data into hits, the SVT internal and global align-
 2222 ment, single hit efficiency, and resolution and
 2223 dE/dx performance of the SVT.

2224 5.5.1. Cluster and hit reconstruction

2225 Under normal running conditions the average
 2226 occupancy of the SVT in a time window of 1 μ s is
 2227 about 3% for the inner layers, with a significant
 2228 azimuthal variation due to beam-induced back-
 2229 grounds, and $< 1\%$ for the outer layers, where
 2230 noise hits dominate. Figure 21 shows the typical
 2231 occupancy as a function of IC number (equivalent
 2232 to azimuthal angle, in this case) for layer 1, ϕ side.
 2233 In the inner layers, the occupancy is dominated
 2234 by machine backgrounds, which are significantly
 2235 higher in the horizontal plane, seen in the plot
 2236 as the peaks near IC numbers 3 and 25, approxi-
 2237 mately.

2238 The first step of the reconstruction program
 2239 consists in discarding out-of-time channels. A
 2240 time correction, the time between the passage
 2241 of the particle and the time the shaper exceeds
 2242 threshold, is performed, after which hits with
 2243 times more than 200 ns from the event time (de-
 2244 termined by the drift chamber) are discarded.
 2245 The loss of real hits from this procedure is negli-
 2246 gible. The resulting in-time hits are then passed
 2247 to the cluster finding algorithm. First, the charge
 2248 pulse height (Q) of a single pulse is calculated
 2249 from the ToT value. In a first pass, clusters are
 2250 formed grouping adjacent strips with consistent
 2251 times. In a second pass clusters separated by
 2252 just one strip are merged into one cluster. The
 2253 two original clusters plus the merged cluster are
 2254 made available to the pattern recognition algo-
 2255 rithm, which chooses among the three.

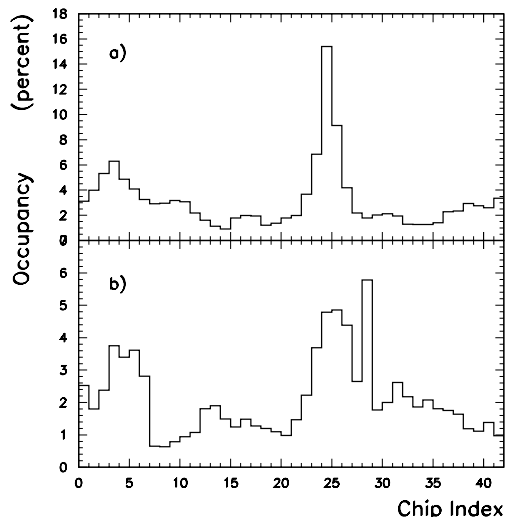


Figure 21. Typical occupancy in percent as a function of IC number in layer 1, ϕ side for a) forward half-modules and b) backward half-modules. IC number corresponds to the azimuthal angle and the increased occupancy in the horizontal plane is visible near ICs 3 and 25.

The position x of a cluster formed by n strips is determined, using the “head-to-tail” algorithm:

$$x = \frac{(x_1 + x_n)}{2} + \frac{p(Q_n - Q_1)}{2(Q_n + Q_1)},$$

2256 where x_i and Q_i are the position and collected
 2257 charge of i -th strip, respectively, and p is the read-
 2258 out pitch. This formula results in a cluster posi-
 2259 tion that is always within $p/2$ of the geometrical
 2260 center of the cluster. The cluster pulse height
 2261 is simply the sum of the strip charges, while the
 2262 cluster time is the average of the signal times.

2263 5.5.2. Alignment

2264 The alignment of the SVT is performed in two
 2265 steps. The first step consists of determining the
 2266 internal (or local) relative positions of the 340
 2267 silicon sensors. Once this is accomplished, the
 2268 next step is to align the SVT as a whole within
 2269 the global coordinate system defined by the drift
 2270 chamber. The primary reason for breaking the

alignment process into these two steps is that the local positions are relatively stable in time compared to the global position. Also, the local alignment procedure is considerably more complex than the global alignment procedure. Thus, the global alignment can be updated on a run-by-run basis, while the local alignment constants are changed as needed, typically after magnet quenches or detector access.

The local alignment procedure is performed using tracks from $e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-$ events and cosmic rays. Well-isolated high momentum tracks from hadronic events are also used to supplement sensors that are not sufficiently illuminated by dimuon and cosmic events. Data samples sufficient to perform the local alignment are collected in 1 to 2 days of typical running conditions.

In $\mu^+\mu^-$ events the two tracks are simultaneously fit using a Kalman filtering technique that utilizes the known beam momentum. The use of tracks from cosmic rays reduces any systematic distortion that may be introduced in the local alignment due to imprecise knowledge of the beam momentum. For all tracks, no information from the DCH is used, effectively decoupling the SVT and DCH.

In addition to the information from tracks, data from an optical survey performed during the assembly of the SVT is included in the alignment procedure. The typical precision of these optical measurements is $4\ \mu\text{m}$. This survey information is only used to constrain sensors relative to other sensors in the same module, but not one module to another or one layer to another. Furthermore, only degrees of freedom in the plane of the sensor are constrained as they are expected to be the most stable given the assembly procedure.

Using the hit residuals from the aforementioned set of tracks and the optical survey information, a χ^2 is formed for each sensor and minimized with respect to the sensor's 6 local parameters. Because each sensor's χ^2 is minimized separately, the process must be iterated. The combination of constraints coming from the overlapping regions of the silicon sensors, the di-muon fit, the cosmic rays and the optical survey result in an internally consistent local alignment.

After the internal alignment, the SVT is con-

sidered as a rigid body. The second alignment step consists in determining the position of the SVT with respect to the drift chamber. Tracks with sufficient numbers of SVT and DCH hits are fit two times: once using only the DCH information and again using only the SVT hits. The six global alignment parameters, three translations and three rotations, are determined by minimizing the difference between track parameters obtained with the SVT-only and the DCH-only fits. As reported above, because of the diurnal movement of the SVT with respect to the drift chamber, this global alignment needs to be performed once per run (\sim every 2-3 hours). The alignment constants obtained in a given run are then used to reconstruct the data in the subsequent run. This procedure, known as "rolling calibrations", ensures that track reconstruction is always performed with up-to-date global alignment constants.

Figure 22 shows a comparison between the optical alignment made during the SVT assembly in February 1999 and a local alignment using data taken during January, 2000. The alignment from tracking data was made without using cosmes or constraints from the optical survey. The width of the distributions in these plots has four contributions: 1) The SVT was disassembled from its assembly jig and re-assembled on the IR magnets, 2) time dependent motion of the SVT after mounting, 3) statistical errors, and 4) systematic errors. The second set of plots shows the difference in two alignment sets for data taken in January 2000 as compared to March 2000. In general, the stability of the inner three layers is excellent, with slightly larger tails in the outer two layers. The radial coordinate is less tightly constrained in all measurements because the radial location of the charge deposition is not well known, and most of the information about the radial locations comes only from constraints in the overlap region of the sensors.

5.5.3. Performance

The SVT hit efficiency can be calculated for each half-module by comparing the number of associated hits to the number of tracks crossing the active area of the module. As can be seen in

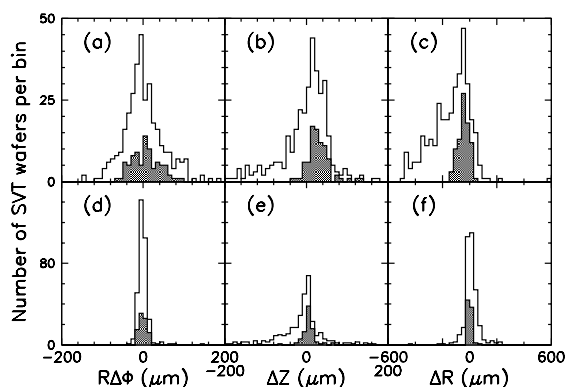


Figure 22. Comparison of a local alignment of all the sensors in the SVT using data from January 2000 with the optical survey of the SVT made during assembly in February 1999 in the (a) $R\Delta\phi$, (b) ΔZ and ΔR coordinates. Plots (d), (e), and (f) show the difference between two local alignments using data from January 15-19 and March 6-7, 2000 for the $R\Delta\phi$, ΔZ , and ΔR coordinates, respectively. In all the plots, the shaded regions correspond to the sensors in the first 3 layers. In comparing the different alignments and optical survey, a six parameter fit (three global translations and three global rotations) has been applied between the data sets.

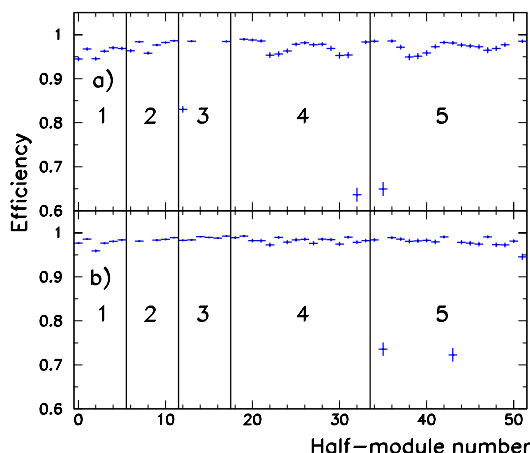


Figure 23. SVT hit reconstruction efficiency, as measured on $\mu^+\mu^-$ events for a) forward half-modules and b) backward half-modules. The plots show the probability of associating both a ϕ and z hit to a track passing through the active part of the detector. The horizontal axis corresponds to the different modules, with the vertical lines separate the different layers as numbered. Missing values correspond to non-functioning half-modules.

2366 Figure 23, a combined hardware and software efficiencies of 97% is measured, excluding defective
 2367 readout sections (9 out of 208), but employing no
 2368 special treatment for other defects, such as broken
 2369 AC coupling capacitors or dead channels on front-
 2370 end chips. Actually, since most of the defects
 2371 affect a single channel, they do not contribute
 2372 heavily to inefficiency, because most charge de-
 2373 positions involve two or more strips, due to track
 2374 crossing angles and, to some degree, charge diffu-
 2375 sion.
 2376

2377 The spatial resolution of SVT hits is deter-
 2378 mined by measuring the distance (in the plane of
 2379 the sensor) between the track trajectory and the
 2380 hit, using high-momentum tracks in two prong
 2381 events. The uncertainty due to the track trajec-
 2382 tory is subtracted from the width of the resid-
 2383 ual distribution to obtain the hit resolution. Fig-

2384 ure 24 shows the SVT hit resolution for z and ϕ
 2385 side hits as a function of track incident angle, for
 2386 each of the five layers. The measured resolutions
 2387 are in excellent agreement with expectations from
 2388 Monte Carlo simulations.

2389 Initial studies have shown that hit reconstruction
 2390 efficiency and spatial resolution are effectiv-
 2391 e-ly independent of occupancy for the occu-
 2392 pancy levels observed so far.

2393 Measurement of the ToT value by the ATOM
 2394 chips enables one to obtain the pulse height, and
 2395 hence the ionization dE/dx in the SVT sensor.
 2396 The values of ToT are converted to pulse height
 2397 using a lookup table computed from the pulse
 2398 shapes obtained in the bench measurements. The
 2399 pulse height is corrected for track length vari-

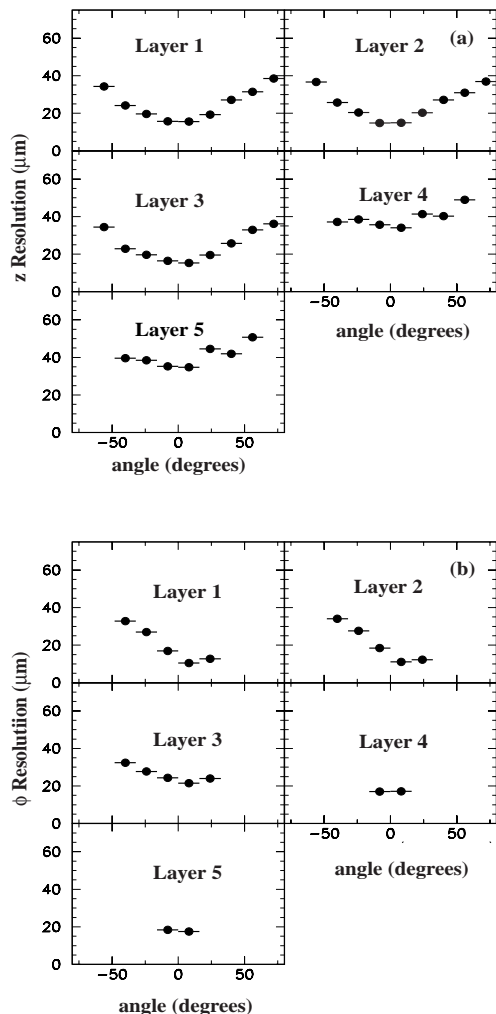


Figure 24. SVT hit resolution in the a) z and b) ϕ coordinate in microns, plotted as a function of track incident angle in degrees. Each plot shows a different layer of the SVT. The plots in the ϕ coordinate for layers 1-3 are asymmetric around $\phi = 0$ because of the “pin-wheel” design of the inner layers. There are fewer points in the ϕ resolution plots for the outer layers as they subtend smaller angles than the inner layers.

2400 ation. The double sided sensors provide up to
 2401 10 measurements of dE/dx per track. For every
 2402 track with signals from at least 4 sensor in the
 2403 SVT, a 60% truncated mean dE/dx is calculated.
 2404 The cluster with the smallest dE/dx energy is
 2405 also removed to reduce sensitivity to electronics
 2406 noise. For minimum-ionizing particles, the reso-
 2407 lution on the truncated mean dE/dx is approx-
 2408 imately 14%. We can achieve a 2σ separation
 2409 between the kaons and pions up to momentum
 2410 of 500 MeV/c, and between kaons and protons
 2411 beyond 1 GeV/c.

2412 5.6. Summary and Outlook

2413 The Silicon Vertex tracker has been operating
 2414 efficiently since its installation in the *BABAR*
 2415 experiment in May 1999. The five layer device,
 2416 based on double-sided silicon sensors, has satis-
 2417 fied the original design goals, in particular the
 2418 targets specified for efficiency, hit resolution and
 2419 low transverse momentum track reconstruction.
 2420 The radiation dose during the first 25fb^{-1} of in-
 2421 tegrated luminosity is within the planned bud-
 2422 get, and no modules have failed due to radiation
 2423 damage. The performance of the SVT modules
 2424 at high radiations dose is currently being stud-
 2425 ied. Early results indicate that the sensors will
 2426 continue to function after type inversion (at 1-
 2427 3 MRad), but further tests with irradiated sen-
 2428 sors and ATOM ICs need to be performed. A
 2429 program of spare module production has com-
 2430 menced, with the goal of replacing modules that
 2431 are expected to fail due to radiation damage.
 2432 Beam generated backgrounds are expected to rise
 2433 with increasing luminosity. Physics studies at five
 2434 times the current backgrounds levels indicate no
 2435 change in mass or vertex resolution for the mode
 2436 $B^0 \rightarrow J/\psi K_S$ and a $\sim 20\%$ loss of resolution
 2437 in the $D^{*+} - D^0$ mass difference. In this study
 2438 the detector efficiency for both decay modes was
 2439 lower by 15–20%.

2440 REFERENCES

- 2441 1. D. Boutigny et al., SLAC-R-0443 (1994) 69.
 2442 2. UBE Industries, Japan. see also [3]
 2443 3. C. Bozzi et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Meth-*
 2444 *ods A447* (2000) 20.

- 2445 4. D. Barbieri et al., *Nuo. Cim.* **A112** (1999) 2464
 2446 113.
 2447 5. MICRON Semiconductor Ltd., Lancing, U.K. 2465
 2448 6. L. Bosisio, private communication of preliminary 2466
 2449 results. 2467
 2450 7. G. Della Ricca et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Meth-* 2468
 2451 *ods* **A409** (1998) 258. 2469
 2452 8. V. Re et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Methods* **A409** 2470
 2453 (1998) 354. 2471
 2454 9. F. Lanni and F. Palombo, *Nucl. Instr. and* 2472
 2455 *Methods* **A379** (1996) 399. The HDIs are 2473
 2456 manufactured by AUREL, Milano, Italy (?). 2474
 2457 10. J. Beringer et al., “The Data Transmis- 2475
 2458 sion System for the BABAR Silicon Vertex 2476
 2459 Tracker”, *BABAR Note* # 518, May 2000. 2477
 2460 11. R. Claus et al., SLAC-PUB-8134 (1999). 2478
 2461 12. CAEN – Costruzioni Apparecchiature Elet- 2479
 2462 troniche Nucleari – Via Vetraia, 11 – 55049 2480
 2463 Viareggio, Italy. 2481

2464 6. Drift Chamber

2465 6.1. Purpose and Design Requirements

2466 The principal purpose of the drift chamber
 2467 (DCH) is the efficient detection of charged parti-
 2468 cles and the measurement of their momenta and
 2469 angles with high precision. These high preci-
 2470 sion measurements enable the reconstruction of
 2471 exclusive B and D meson decays with minimal
 2472 background. The DCH complements the mea-
 2473 surements of the impact parameter and the di-
 2474 rections of charged tracks provided by the SVT
 2475 near the IP. At lower momenta, the DCH mea-
 2476 surements dominate the errors on the extrapola-
 2477 tion of charged tracks to the DIRC, EMC, and
 2478 IFR. Most critical are the angles at the DIRC,
 2479 because the uncertainties in the charged particle
 2480 track parameters add to the uncertainty in the
 2481 measurement of the Cherenkov angle.

2482 The reconstruction of decay and interaction
 2483 vertices outside of the SVT volume, for instance
 2484 the K_s^0 decays, relies solely on the DCH. For this
 2485 purpose, the chamber should be able to measure
 2486 not only the transverse momenta and positions,
 2487 but also the longitudinal position of tracks, with
 2488 a resolution of ~ 1 mm.

2489 The DCH also needs to supply information for
 2490 the charged particle trigger with a maximum time
 2491 jitter of $0.5 \mu\text{s}$ (Section ??).

2492 For low momentum particles, the DCH is re-
 2493 quired to provide particle identification by mea-
 2494 surement of ionization loss (dE/dx). A resolu-
 2495 tion of about 7% will allow π/K separation up
 2496 to 700 MeV/ c . This capability is complementary
 2497 to that of the DIRC in the barrel region, while
 2498 in the extreme backward and forward directions,
 2499 the DCH is the only device providing some dis-
 2500 crimination of particles of different mass.

2501 Since the average momentum of charged par-
 2502 ticles produced in B and D meson decays is less
 2503 than 1 GeV/ c , multiple scattering is a significant,
 2504 if not the dominant limitation on the track pa-
 2505 rameter resolution. In order to reduce this contri-
 2506 bution, material in front of and inside the cham-
 2507 ber volume has to be minimized.

2508 Finally, the DCH must be operational in
 2509 the presence of large beam-generated back-
 2510 grounds, which were predicted to generate rates

2511 of ~ 5 kHz/cell in the innermost layers.

2512 6.2. Mechanical Design and Assembly

2513 6.2.1. Overview

2514 The DCH is relatively small in diameter, but
 2515 almost 3 m long, with 40 layers of small hexag-
 2516 onal cells providing up to 40 spatial and ioniza-
 2517 tion loss measurements for charged particles with
 2518 transverse momentum greater than 180 MeV/c.
 2519 Longitudinal position information is obtained by
 2520 placing the wires in 24 of the 40 layers at small
 2521 angles with respect to the z -axis. By choosing
 2522 low-mass aluminium field wires and a helium-
 2523 based gas mixture the multiple scattering inside
 2524 the drift chamber is held to a minimum, less than
 2525 0.2% X_0 of material. The properties of the chosen
 2526 gas, a 80:20 mixture of helium:isobutane, are pre-
 2527 sented in Table 8. This mixture has a radiation
 2528 length that is five times larger than commonly
 2529 used argon-based gases. The smaller Lorentz an-
 2530 gle results in a rather uniform time-distance rela-
 2531 tionship and thereby improved spatial resolution.

Table 8

Properties of helium-isobutane gas mixture at at-
 mospheric pressure and 20°C. The drift velocity
 and Lorentz angle are given for an electric field of
 600 V/cm with no magnetic field and with 1.5 T,
 respectively.

Parameter	Values
Mixture He : C ₄ H ₁₀	80:20
Radiation Length	807 m
Primary Ions	21.2 /cm
Drift Velocity	22 μ m/ns
Lorentz Angle	32°
dE/dx Resolution	6.9%

2532 The inner cylindrical wall of the DCH is kept
 2533 thin to facilitate the matching of the SVT and
 2534 DCH tracks, to improve the track resolution for
 2535 high momentum tracks, and to minimize the
 2536 background from photon conversions and inter-
 2537 actions. Material in the outer wall and in the
 2538 forward direction is also minimized so as not to
 2539 degrade the performance of the DIRC and the
 2540 EMC. For this reason, the HV distribution and

2541 all of the readout electronics are mounted on the
 2542 backward endplate of the chamber. This choice
 2543 also eliminates the need for a massive, heavily
 2544 shielded cable plant.

2545 A longitudinal cross section and dimensions of
 2546 the DCH are shown in Figure 25. The DCH is
 2547 bounded radially by the support tube at its inner
 2548 radius and the DIRC at its outer radius. The de-
 2549 vice is asymmetrically located with respect to the
 2550 interaction point. The forward length of 1749 mm
 2551 is chosen so that particles emitted at polar angles
 2552 of 300 mrad traverse at least half of the layers
 2553 of the chamber before exiting through the front
 2554 endplate. In the backward direction, the length
 2555 of 1015 mm means that particles with polar an-
 2556 gles down to -475 mrad traverse at least half of
 2557 the layers. This choice ensures sufficient coverage
 2558 for forward-going tracks, and thus avoids signifi-
 2559 cant degradation of the invariant mass resolution,
 2560 while at the same time maintaining a good safety
 2561 margin on the electrical stability of the cham-
 2562 ber. The DCH extends beyond the endplate by
 2563 485 mm at the backward end to accommodate the
 2564 readout electronics, cables, and an rf shield. It
 2565 extends beyond the forward endplate by 68 mm
 2566 to provide space for wire feed-throughs and an rf
 2567 shield.

2568 6.2.2. Structural Components

2569 Details of the DCH mechanical design are pre-
 2570 sented in Figure 26. The endplates, which carry
 2571 an axial load of 31,800 kN, are made from alu-
 2572 minium plates of 24 mm thickness. At the for-
 2573 ward end, this thickness is reduced to 12 mm be-
 2574 yond a radius of 46.9 cm to minimize the material
 2575 in front of the calorimeter endcap. For this thick-
 2576 ness, the estimated safety margin on the plastic
 2577 yield point for endplate material (6061T651 alu-
 2578 minium) is not more than a factor of two. The
 2579 maximum total deflection of the endplates under
 2580 loading is small, about 2 mm or 28% of the 7 mm
 2581 wire elongation under tension. During installa-
 2582 tion of the wires, this small deflection was taken
 2583 into account by over-tensioning the wires.

2584 The inner and outer cylinders are load bearing
 2585 to reduce the maximum stress and deflections of
 2586 the endplates. The stepped forward endplate cre-
 2587 ated a complication during the assembly, because

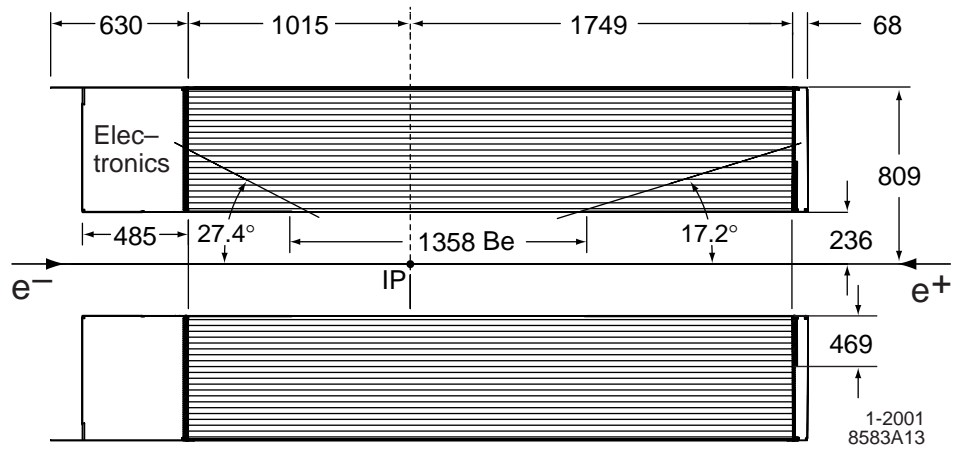


Figure 25. Longitudinal section of the drift chamber with principal dimensions; the chamber center is offset by 370 mm in z from the interaction point.

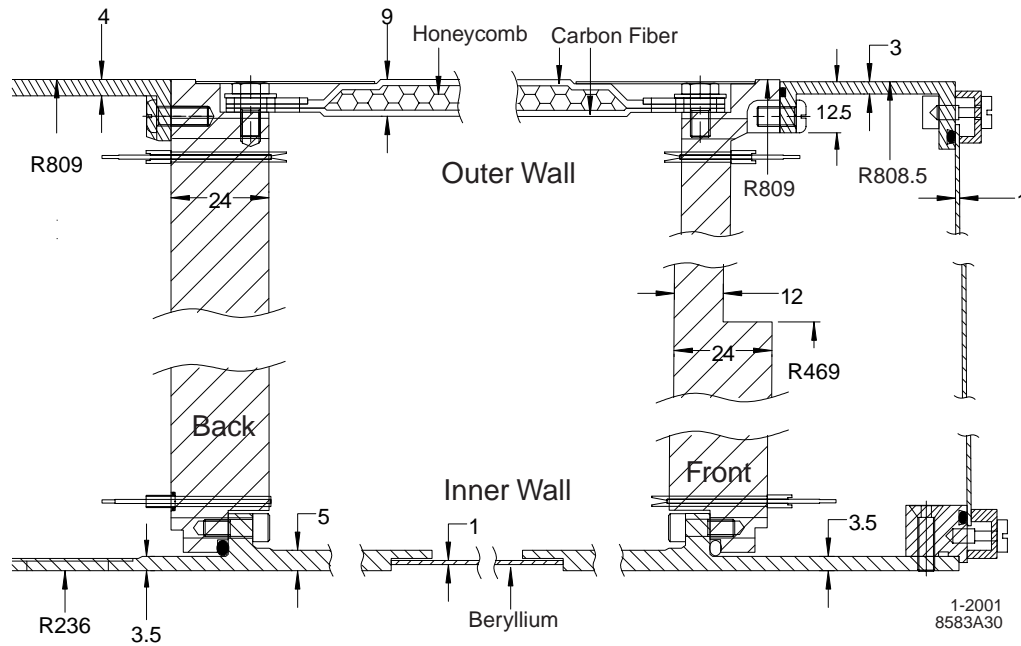


Figure 26. Details of the structural elements of the DCH. All components are made of aluminium, except for the 1 mm-thick inner beryllium wall and the 9 mm-thick outer composite wall.

the thinner forward endplate would deflect more than the thicker backward endplate. The outside rim of the forward endplate had to be pre-loaded, i.e., displaced by 2.17 mm in the forward direction, to maintain the inside and outside rims of the rear endplate at the same longitudinal position after the load transfer to the outer cylinder was complete.

Prior to installation on the inner cylinder, the two endplates were inspected on a coordinate-measuring machine. All sense wire holes, as well as 5% of the field and clearing field wire holes, were measured to determine their absolute locations. The achieved concentricity was $38\ \mu\text{m}$ for both sense and field wires, better than the specification by more than a factor of two. In addition, the diameters of the same sample of endplate holes were checked with precision gauge pins. All holes passed the diameter specification ($4.500 \pm_{0.000}^{0.025}$ for sense wires and $2.500 \pm_{0.00}^{0.025}$ for the field and guard wires).

The inner cylindrical wall of the DCH, which carries 40% of the wire load, was made from five sections, a central 1 mm-thick beryllium tube with two aluminium extensions which were electron-beam welded to aluminium end flanges to form a 3 m-long cylindrical part. The central section was made from three 120° segments of rolled and brazed beryllium. The end flanges have precision surfaces onto which the endplates were mounted. These surfaces set the angles of the two endplates with respect to the axis and significantly constrain the concentricity of the tube. The inner cylinder also provides a substantial rf shield down to the PEP-II bunch-gap frequency of 136 kHz.

The outer wall bears 60% of axial wire load between the endplates. To simplify its installation, this external wall was constructed from two half-cylinders with longitudinal and circumferential joints. The gas and electrical seals for these joints were made up *in situ*. The main structural element consists of two 1.6 mm-thick ($0.006X_0$) carbon fiber skins laminated to a 6 mm-thick honeycomb core. The outer shell is capable of withstanding a differential pressure of 30 mbar and temperature variations as large as $\pm 20^\circ\text{C}$, conditions that could be encountered during ship-

ping or installation. Aluminium foil, $25\ \mu\text{m}$ -thick on the inside surface and $100\ \mu\text{m}$ on the outside, are in good electrical contact with the endplates, thereby completing the rf shield for the chamber.

The total thickness of the drift chamber at normal incidence is $1.08\% X_0$, of which the wires and gas mixture contribute $0.2\% X_0$, and the inner wall $0.28\% X_0$.

6.2.3. Wire Feed-Throughs

A total of five different types of feed-throughs were required for the chamber to accommodate the sense, field, and clearing field wires, as well as two different endplate thicknesses. The five types are illustrated in Figure 27. They incorporate crimp pins of a simple design which fasten and precisely locate the wires. The choice of pin material (gold-plated copper for the signal wires and gold-plated aluminium for the field wires) and wall thickness in the crimp region was optimized to provide an allowable range of almost $150\ \mu\text{m}$ in crimp size, as a primary means for avoiding wire breakage.

Crimp pins were either press-fit into an insulator made from a single piece of injection-molded thermoplastic reinforced with 30% silica glass fiber [1], or swaged into a copper jacket for the field wires. The plastic insulates the sense, guard, and clearing field wires from the electrically grounded endplates, while the metal jackets provide good ground contact for field wires ($< 0.1\ \Omega$) on the backward endplate. The outer diameter of the field and clearing field feed-throughs was maintained at $2.475^{+0.000}_{-0.025}$ mm while the sense wire feed-through had a larger ($4.5^{+0.000}_{-0.025}$ mm) outer diameter and a longer body (41.7 mm). This choice provided both thicker insulating walls and a longer projection into the gas volume to better shield the HV from the grounded endplate.

6.2.4. Assembly and Stringing

Assembly of the chamber components and installation of the wires was carried out in a large clean room (Class 10,000) at TRIUMF in Vancouver. The wires were strung horizontally without the outer cylindrical shell in place. The endplates were mounted and aligned onto the inner cylinder which in turn was supported by a central shaft in

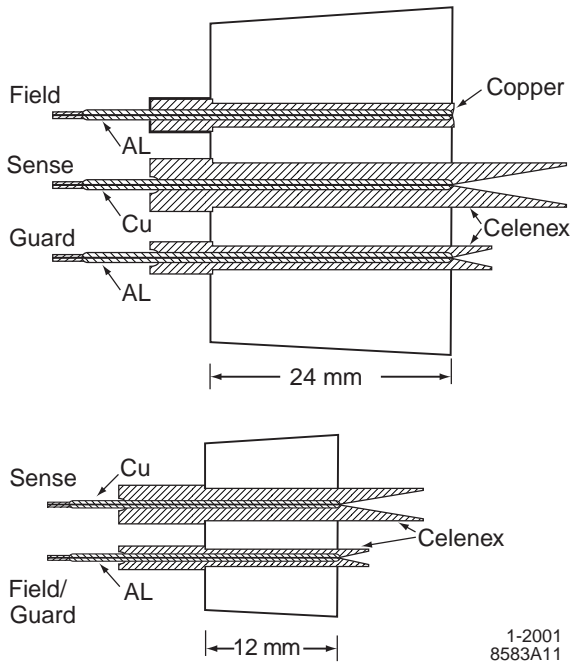


Figure 27. Design of the five wire feed-throughs for the 24 mm-thick endplates and the 12 mm-thick endplate. The copper jacketed feed-through is for grounded field wires, the other four are for sense wires (4.5 mm diameter), and guard and clearing field wires (2.5 mm diameter), all made from a Celenex insulator surrounding the crimp pins.

a mobile fixture. The endplates were mounted on the inner cylinder at the inside rim and attached to support rings at the outside. These rings were connected by radial *spiders* to the central shaft of the stringing frame.

Two teams of two operators each worked in parallel as the wires were strung from the inner radius outward. The two teams were each assisted by an automated wire transporter [2]. A wire was attached to a needle and inserted through an endplate hole where it was captured magnetically by one of the transporters, and then transported and inserted through the appropriate hole in the other endplate. Once a wire was threaded through the feed-throughs, the feed-throughs were glued into

the endplates, and the wire was tensioned and crimped. The automated wire transporters were largely built from industrial components, employing commercial software and hardware. The semi-automatic stringing procedure ensured the correct hole selection, accelerated the stringing rate and greatly improved the cleanliness and quality of the stringing process. The installation of a total of 30,000 wires was completed in less than 15 weeks.

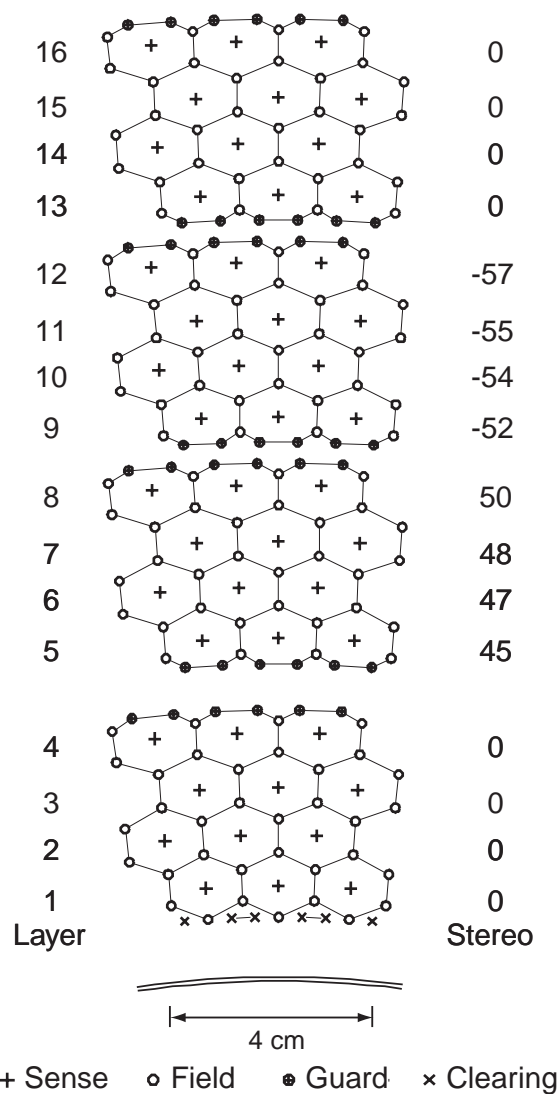
6.3. Drift Cells

6.3.1. Layer Arrangement

The DCH consists of a total of 7,104 small drift cells, arranged in 40 cylindrical layers. The layers are grouped by four into ten superlayers, with the same wire orientation and equal numbers of cells in each layer of a superlayer. Sequential layers are staggered by half a cell. This arrangement enables local segment finding and left-right ambiguity resolution within a superlayer, even if one out of four signals is missing. The stereo angles of the superlayers alternate between axial (A) and stereo (U,V) pairs, in the order AUVAUVAUVA, as shown in Figure 28. The stereo angles vary between ± 45 mrad and ± 76 mrad; they have been chosen such that the drilling patterns are identical for the two endplates. The hole pattern has a 16-fold azimuthal symmetry which is well suited to the modularity of the electronic readout and trigger system. Table 9 summarizes parameters for all superlayers.

6.3.2. Cell Design and Wires

The drift cells are hexagonal in shape, 11.9 mm by approximately 19.0 mm along the radial and azimuthal directions, respectively. The hexagonal cell configuration is desirable because approximate circular symmetry can be achieved over a large portion of the cell. The choice of aspect ratio has the benefit of decreasing the number of wires and electronic channels, while allowing a 40 layer chamber in a confined radial space. Each cell consists of one sense wire surrounded by six field wires, as shown in Figure 28. The properties of the different types of gold-coated wires that make up the drift cells are given in Table 10. The sense wires are made of tungsten-rhenium [3],



1-2001
8583A14

Figure 28. Schematic layout of drift cells for the four innermost superlayers. Lines have been added between field wires to aid in visualization of the cell boundaries. The numbers on the right side give the stereo angles (mrad) of sense wires in each layer. The 1 mm-thick beryllium inner wall is shown inside of the first layer.

Table 9

The DCH superlayer (SL) structure, specifying the number of cells per layer, radius of the innermost sense wire layer, the cell widths, and wire stereo angles, which vary over the four layers in a superlayer as indicated. The radii and widths are specified at the mid-length of the chamber.

SL	# of Cells	Radius (mm)	Width (mm)	Angle (mrad)
1	96	260.4	17.0-19.4	0
2	112	312.4	17.5-19.5	45-50
3	128	363.4	17.8-19.6	-(52-57)
4	144	422.7	18.4-20.0	0
5	176	476.6	16.9-18.2	56-60
6	192	526.1	17.2-18.3	-(63-57)
7	208	585.4	17.7-18.8	0
8	224	636.7	17.8-18.8	65-69
9	240	688.0	18.0-18.9	-(72-76)
10	256	747.2	18.3-19.2	0

2743 20 μm in diameter and tensioned with a weight
 2744 of 30 g. The deflection due to gravity is 200 μm
 2745 at mid-length. Tungsten-rhenium has a substan-
 2746 tially higher linear resistivity (290 Ω/m), com-
 2747 pared to pure tungsten (160 Ω/m), but it is con-
 2748 siderably stronger and has better surface quality.
 2749 While the field wires are at ground potential, a
 2750 positive high voltage is applied to the sense wires.
 2751 An avalanche gain of approximately 5×10^4
 2752 is obtained at a typical operating voltage of 1960 V
 2753 and a 80:20 helium:isobutane gas mixture.

Table 10

DCH wire specifications (all wires are gold plated).

Type	Material	Diameter (μm)	Voltage (V)	Tension (g)
Sense	W-Re	20	1960	30
Field	Al	120	0	155
Guard	Al	80	340	74
Clearing	Al	120	825	155

2754 The relatively low tension on the sense wires
 2755 was chosen so that the aluminium field wires have

2756 matching gravitational sag and are tensioned well
 2757 below the elastic limit. A simulation of the elec-
 2758 trostatic forces shows that the cell configuration
 2759 has no instability problems. At the nominal oper-
 2760 ating voltage of 1960 V, the wires deflect by less
 2761 than $60\ \mu\text{m}$.

2762 The field wires [4] are tensioned with 155 g to
 2763 match the gravitational sag of the sense wires to
 2764 within $20\ \mu\text{m}$. This tension is less than one-half
 2765 the tensile yield strength of the aluminium wire.
 2766 For cells at the inner or outer boundary of a su-
 2767 perlayer, two guard wires are added to improve
 2768 the electrostatic performance of the cell and to
 2769 match the gain of the boundary cells to those of
 2770 the cells in the inner layers. At the innermost
 2771 boundary of layer 1 and the outermost boundary
 2772 of layer 40, two clearing wires have been added
 2773 per cell to collect charges created through pho-
 2774 ton conversions in the material of the walls.

2775 6.3.3. Drift Isochrones

2776 The calculated isochrones and drift paths for
 2777 ions in adjacent cells of layer 3 and 4 of an ax-
 2778 ial superlayer are presented in Figure 29. The
 2779 isochrones are circular near the sense wires, but
 2780 deviate greatly from circles near the field wires.
 2781 Ions originating in the gap between superlayers
 2782 are collected by cells in the edge layers after a de-
 2783 lay of several μs . These lagging ions do not affect
 2784 the drift times measurements, but they contribute
 2785 to the dE/dx measurement.

2786 6.3.4. Cross Talk

2787 A signal on one sense wire produces oppositely-
 2788 charged signals on neighboring wires due to ca-
 2789 pacitive coupling. The cross talk is largest be-
 2790 tween adjacent cells of adjacent layers, ranging
 2791 from -0.5% at a superlayer boundary to -2.7%
 2792 for internal layers within superlayers. For adja-
 2793 cent cells in the same layer, the cross talk ranges
 2794 from -0.8 to -1.8% , while for cells separated by
 2795 two layers it is less than 0.5% .

2796 6.4. Electronics

2797 6.4.1. Design Requirements and Overview

2798 The DCH electronic system is designed to pro-
 2799 vide a measurement of the drift time and the in-
 2800 tegrated charge, as well as a bit for every hit wire
 2801 to the trigger system [5]. In the 80:20 helium-

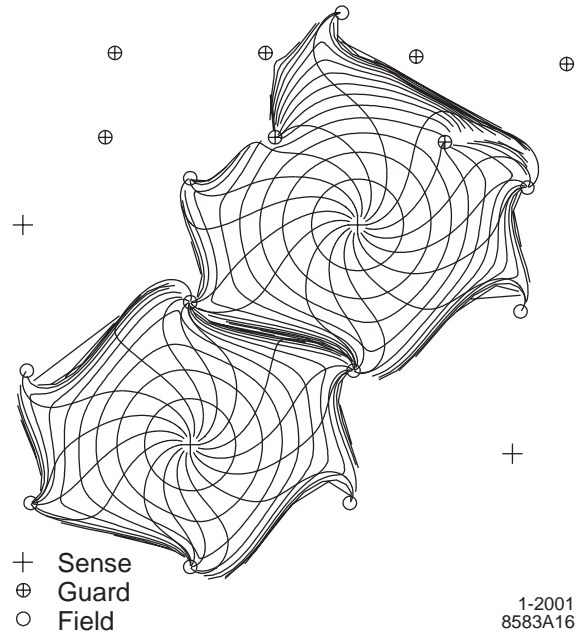


Figure 29. Drift cell isochrones, i.e., contours of equal drift times of ions in cells of layers 3 and 4 of an axial superlayer. The isochrones are spaced by 100 ns. They are circular near the sense wires, but become irregular near the field wires, and extend into the gap between superlayers.

2802 isobutane gas mixture, there are on average some
 2803 22 (44) primary (total) ionization clusters pro-
 2804 duced per cm. The position of the primary ioniza-
 2805 tion clusters is derived from timing of the leading
 2806 edge of the amplified signal. The design goal was
 2807 to achieve a position resolution of $140\ \mu\text{m}$, aver-
 2808 aged over the cells. To reduce the time jitter in
 2809 the signal arrival and at the same time maintain
 2810 a good signal-to-noise ratio, the signal threshold
 2811 was set at about 2.5 primary electrons. For the
 2812 dE/dx measurement, a resolution of 7% was pro-
 2813 jected for a 40-layer chamber.

2814 The small cell size and the difficult access
 2815 through the DIRC strong support tube require a
 2816 very high density of electronics components. As a
 2817 consequence, a compact and highly modular de-
 2818 sign was chosen. The readout is installed in well
 2819 shielded assemblies that are plugged into the end-

2820 plate and are easily removable for maintenance.

2821 A schematic overview of the DCH electronics
 2822 is presented in Figure 30 [6]. The 16-fold az-
 2823 imuthal symmetry of the cell pattern is reflected
 2824 in the readout segmentation. The DCH amplifier
 2825 and digitizer electronics are installed in 3×16
 2826 electronics front-end assemblies (FEAs) that are
 2827 mounted directly onto the rear endplate. There
 2828 are 16 radial bars that extend from the inner
 2829 to the outer chamber walls. These bars pro-
 2830 vide mechanical support and water cooling for the
 2831 FEAs. The assemblies connect to the sense wires
 2832 through service boards, which route the signals
 2833 and HV distribution. A readout interface board
 2834 in each FEA organizes readout of the digitized
 2835 data. Data I/O and trigger I/O modules mul-
 2836 tiplex serial data from the FEAs to high-speed
 2837 optical fibers for transfer to the readout mod-
 2838 ules that are located in the electronics building.

2839 6.4.2. Service Boards

2840 Service boards provide the electrostatic poten-
 2841 tials for signal, guard, and clearing wires, and
 2842 pass signals and ground to the front-end readout
 2843 electronics. A side view of a service board is
 2844 shown in Figure 31. The lower board contains
 2845 the high voltage buses and filtering, current lim-
 2846 iting resistors, and blocking capacitors. Jumpers
 2847 connect adjacent boards. The stored energy is
 2848 minimized by 220 pF HV blocking capacitors.

2849 The series resistors for the protection circuits
 2850 carry the signals to the upper signal board which
 2851 contains the protection diodes and standard out-
 2852 put connectors. Mounting posts, anchored into
 2853 the rear endplate, also serve as ground connec-
 2854 tions.

2855 6.4.3. Front-End Assemblies

2856 The front-end assemblies (FEAs) plug into
 2857 connectors on the back side of the service
 2858 boards. These custom wedge-shaped crates are
 2859 aluminium boxes that contain a single readout
 2860 interface board (ROIB) and 2, 3, or 4 ampli-
 2861 fier/digitizer boards (ADB) for superlayers 1–4,
 2862 5–7, and 8–10, respectively, as shown in Fig-
 2863 ure 32. The crates are mounted with good ther-
 2864 mal contact to the water cooled radial support
 2865 bars. The total heat load generated by the FEAs

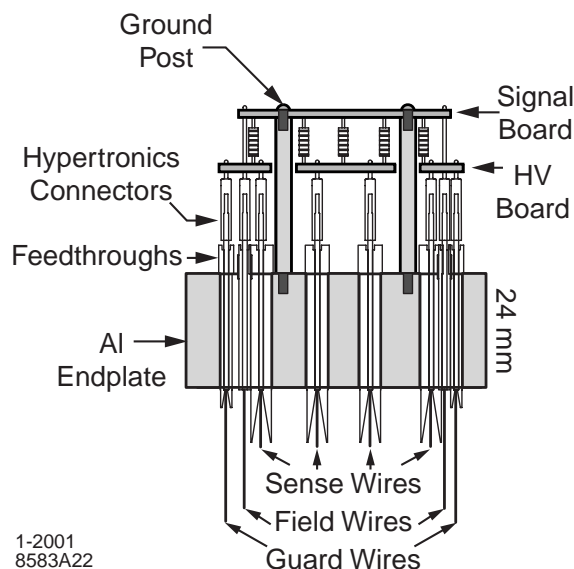


Figure 31. Side view of service boards showing two-tiered structure for HV distribution and signal collection.

2866 is 1.3 kW.

2867 The ADBs are built from basic building blocks
 2868 consisting of two 4-channel amplifier IC [7] feed-
 2869 ing a single 8-channel digitizer custom ASICs [8].
 2870 The number of channels serviced by an ADB is
 2871 60, 48, or 45, for the inner, middle, and outer
 2872 FEA modules, respectively.

2873 The amplifier IC receives the input signal from
 2874 the sense wire and produces a discriminator out-
 2875 put signal for the drift time measurement and a
 2876 shaped analog signal for the dE/dx measurement.
 2877 Both outputs are fully differential. The discrimi-
 2878 nator has gain and bandwidth control, and a volt-
 2879 age controlled threshold. The analog circuit has
 2880 integrator and gain control.

2881 The digitizer IC incorporates a 4-bit TDC for
 2882 time measurement and a 6-bit 15 MHz FADC to
 2883 measure the total deposited charge. The TDC is
 2884 a phase-locked digital delay linear vernier on the
 2885 sample clock of 15 MHz, which achieves a 1 ns
 2886 precision for leading edge timing. The FADC de-
 2887 sign is based on a resistor-divider comparator lad-
 2888 der that operates in bi-linear mode to cover the

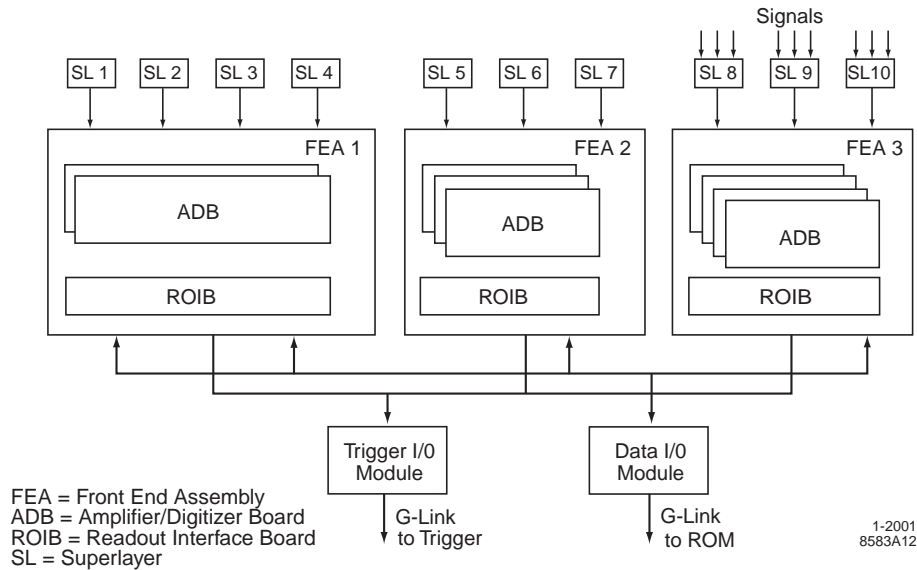


Figure 30. Block diagram for a $1/16^{th}$ wedge of the readout system, showing logical organization of the three front-end assemblies and their connections to the trigger and data I/O modules

2889 full dynamic range. The digitized output signals
 2890 are stored in a trigger latency buffer for $12.9 \mu s$,
 2891 after which a L1 Accept initiates the transfer of
 2892 a $2.2 \mu s$ block of data to the readout buffer. In
 2893 addition, trigger information is supplied for every
 2894 channel, based either on the presence of a TDC
 2895 hit during the sample period or FADC differential
 2896 pulse height information, should a higher discrim-
 2897 inator level be desirable.

2898 The ROIB interprets FCTS commands to control
 2899 the flow of data and trigger information.
 2900 Data are moved to FIFOs on the ROIBs, and then
 2901 to data and trigger I/O modules via 59.5 MHz se-
 2902 rial links. A total of four such links are required
 2903 per $1/16^{th}$ wedge, one for each of the outer two
 2904 FEAs and two for the innermost of the FEA. Each
 2905 data I/O module services all FEAs one quad-
 2906 rant and transmits the data to a single ROM
 2907 via one optical fiber link. The trigger stream is
 2908 first multiplexed onto a total of 30 serial lines per
 2909 wedge for transmission to the trigger I/O mod-
 2910 ule. Trigger data from two wedges of FEAs are
 2911 then transmitted to the trigger system via three

2912 optical links. Thus, a total of 28 optical fibers,
 2913 four for the data and 24 for the charged particle
 2914 trigger, are required to transfer the DCH data to
 2915 the electronics building.

2916 6.4.4. Data Acquisition

2917 The data stream is received and controlled by
 2918 four *BABAR* standard readout modules. Drift
 2919 chamber-specific feature extraction algorithms
 2920 convert the raw FADC and TDC information into
 2921 drift times, total charge, and a status word. The
 2922 time and charge are corrected channel-by-channel
 2923 for time offsets, pedestals, and gain constants.
 2924 These algorithms take about $1 \mu s$ per channel,
 2925 and reduce the data volume by roughly a factor
 2926 of four.

2927 6.4.5. High Voltage System

2928 The HV bias lines on the chamber are daisy-
 2929 chained together so that each superlayer requires
 2930 only four power supplies, except for superlayer
 2931 1 which has eight. The high voltages are sup-
 2932 plied to the sense, guard and clearing wires by a

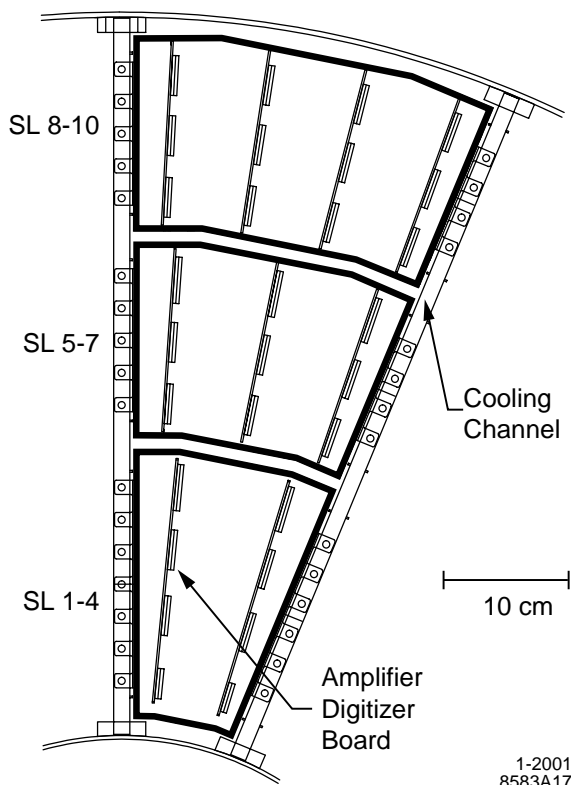


Figure 32. Layout of $1/16^{th}$ of the rear endplate, showing 3 FEA boxes between water cooled channels.

2933 CAEN SY527 HV mainframe [9], equipped with
 2934 24-channel plug-in modules. The sense wires are
 2935 supplied by 44 HV channels providing up to $40 \mu A$
 2936 of current each that can be monitored with a res-
 2937 olution of 0.1%.

2938 6.5. Gas System

2939 The gas system has been designed to pro-
 2940 vide a stable 80:20 helium-isobutane mixture at
 2941 a constant over pressure of 4 mbar [10]. Gas
 2942 mixing and recirculation is controlled by precise
 2943 mass flow controllers; the total flow is tuned to
 2944 $15 \ell/\text{min}$, of which $2.5 \ell/\text{min}$ are fresh gas. Dur-
 2945 ing normal operation, the complete DCH gas vol-
 2946 ume is re-circulated in six hours, and one full vol-
 2947 ume of fresh gas is added every 36 hours. The
 2948 pressure in the DCH is measured by two indepen-

2949 dent pressure gauges, one of which is connected
 2950 to a regulator controlling the speed of the com-
 2951 pressor. The relative pressure in the chamber is
 2952 controlled to better than ± 0.05 mbar.

2953 Oxygen is removed from the gas mixture us-
 2954 ing a palladium catalytic filter. The water con-
 2955 tent is maintained at 3500 ± 200 ppm by passing
 2956 an adjustable fraction of the gas through a water
 2957 bubbler. This relatively high level of water vapor
 2958 is maintained to prevent electrical discharge. In
 2959 addition to various sensors to monitor pressure,
 2960 temperature, and flow at several points of the sys-
 2961 tem, a small wire chamber with an ^{55}Fe source
 2962 continuously monitors gain of the gas mixture.

2963 6.6. Calibrations and Monitoring

2964 6.7. Electronics Calibration

2965 The front-end electronics are calibrated daily to
 2966 determine the channel-by-channel correction con-
 2967 stants and thresholds. Calibration pulses are pro-
 2968 duced internally and input to the preamplifier at
 2969 a rate of about 160 Hz. The calibration signals
 2970 are processed in the ROM to minimize the data
 2971 transfer and fully exploit the available process-
 2972 ing power. The results are stored for subsequent
 2973 feature extraction. The entire online calibration
 2974 procedure takes less than two minutes.

2975 6.7.1. Environmental Monitoring

2976 The operating conditions of the DCH are mon-
 2977 itored in real time by a variety of sensors and
 2978 read out by the detector-wide CAN bus system.
 2979 These sensors monitor the flow rate, pressure,
 2980 and gas mixture; the voltages and currents ap-
 2981 plied to the wires in the chamber; the voltages
 2982 and currents distributed to the electronics from
 2983 power supplies and regulators; instantaneous and
 2984 cumulative radiation doses; temperature and hu-
 2985 midity around the chamber electronics and in the
 2986 equipment racks. Additional sensors monitor the
 2987 atmosphere in and around the detector for excess
 2988 isobutane, which could pose a flammability or ex-
 2989 plosive hazard in the event of a leak.

2990 Many of the sensors are connected to hardware
 2991 interlocks, which ensure that the chamber is au-
 2992 tomatically put into a safe state in response to an
 2993 unsafe condition. All of these systems have per-
 2994 formed reliably. In addition, automated software

2995 monitors raw data quality, chamber occupancies
 2996 and efficiencies to sense variations in electronics
 2997 performance that might indicate more subtle op-
 2998 erational problems.

2999 6.7.2. Operational Stability

3000 The design of the DCH specifies a voltage of
 3001 1960 V on the sense wires to achieve the desired
 3002 gain and resolution. The chamber voltage was
 3003 lowered for part of the run to 1900 V out of con-
 3004 cern for a small region of the chamber that was
 3005 damaged during the commissioning phase by in-
 3006 advertently applying 2 kV to the guard wires.
 3007 Wires in this region were disconnected when con-
 3008 tinuous discharge was observed over extended pe-
 3009 riods of time.

3010 6.8. Performance

3011 The DCH was first operated with full mag-
 3012 netic field immediately after the installation into
 3013 *BABAR*. Cosmic ray data were recorded and ex-
 3014 tensive studies of the basic cell performance were
 3015 performed to develop calibration algorithms for
 3016 the time-to-distance and dE/dx measurements.
 3017 These algorithms were then implemented as de-
 3018 scribed below for colliding beam data. Calibra-
 3019 tions are monitored continuously to provide feed-
 3020 back to the operation; some time varying param-
 3021 eters are updated continuously as part of OPR.
 3022 For charge particle tracking the DCH and SVT
 3023 information is combined; the performance of the
 3024 combined tracking system is described in Chap-
 3025 ter 9.

3026 6.8.1. Time-to-Distance Relation

3027 The precise relation between the measured drift
 3028 time and drift distance is determined from sam-
 3029 ples of e^+e^- and $\mu^+\mu^-$ events. For each signal,
 3030 the drift distance is estimated by computing the
 3031 distance of closest approach between the track
 3032 and the wire. To avoid bias, the fit does not use
 3033 the hit on the wire under consideration. The es-
 3034 timated drift distances and measured drift times
 3035 are averaged over all wires in a layer, but the data
 3036 are accumulated separately for tracks passing on
 3037 the left of a sense wire and on the right. The time-
 3038 distance relation is fit to a sixth-order Chebychev
 3039 polynomial. An example of such a fit is shown in
 3040 Figure 33.

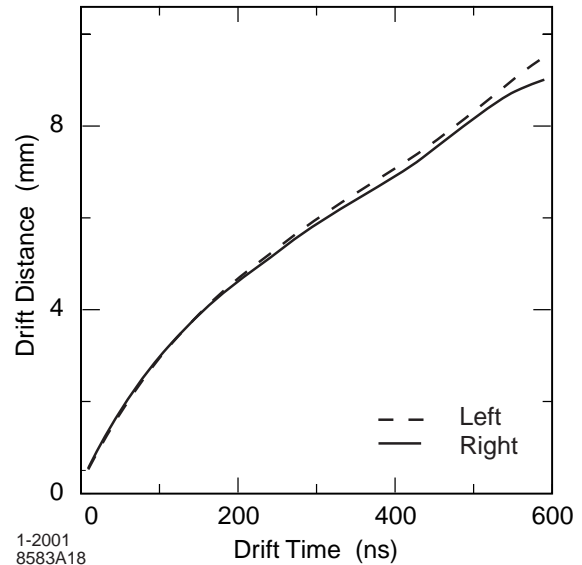


Figure 33. The drift time versus distance relation for left and right half of a cell, obtained from a fit to data averaged over all cells in layer 18 of the DCH.

3041 An additional correction is made for tracks
 3042 with varying entrance angle into the drift cell.
 3043 This angle is defined relative to the radial vector
 3044 from the IP to the sense wire. The correction is
 3045 applied as a scale factor to the drift distance and
 3046 was determined layer-by-layer from a Garfield [11]
 3047 simulation. The entrance angle correction is im-
 3048 plemented as a tenth-order Chebychev polynomi-
 3049 al of the drift distance, with coefficients which
 3050 are functions of the entrance angle.

3051 Figure 34 shows the position resolution as a
 3052 function of the drift distance, separately for the
 3053 left and the right side of the sense wire. The
 3054 resolution is taken from Gaussian fits to the dis-
 3055 tributions of residuals obtained from unbiased
 3056 track fits. The results are based on multi-hadron
 3057 events, for data averaged over all cells in layer 18.

3058 6.8.2. Charge Measurement

3059 The specific energy loss, dE/dx , for charged
 3060 particles traversing the DCH is derived from mea-
 3061 surement of total charge deposited in each drift

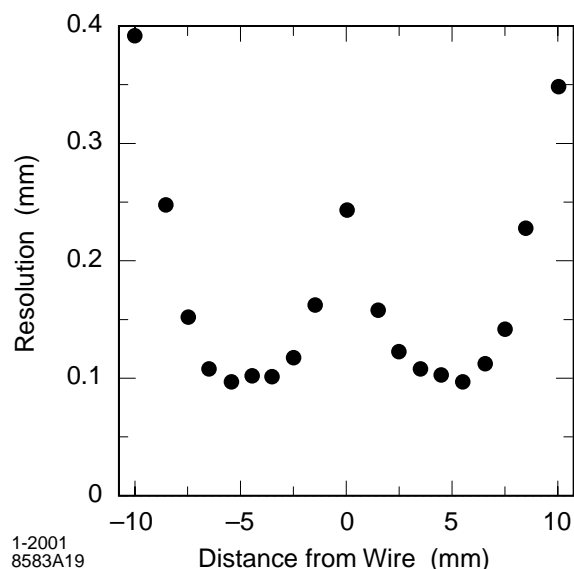
1-2001
8583A19

Figure 34. Position resolution as a function of the drift distance, separately for tracks on the left and right of the sense wire. The data are averaged over all cells in layer 18 of the DCH.

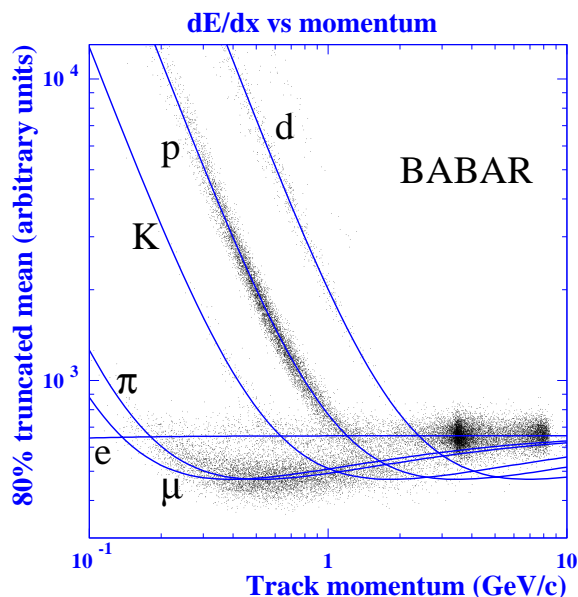


Figure 35. Measurement of dE/dx in the DCH as a function of track momenta. The data include large samples of beam background triggers, as evident from the high rate of protons.

3062 cell. The charge collected per signal cell is measured as part of the feature extraction algorithm 3083
3063 in the ROM. Individual measurements are corrected 3084
3064 for gain variations, pedestal-subtracted and 3085
3065 integrated over a period of approximately 3086
3066 $1.8 \mu\text{s}$.

3067 The truncated mean of the specific energy loss 3087
3068 per track is computed from the lowest 80% of the 3088
3069 individual measurements. Various corrections are 3089
3070 applied to remove sources of bias that degrade the 3090
3071 accuracy of the primary ionization measurement. 3091
3072 These corrections include the following: 3092

- 3074 • changes in gas pressure and/or tempera- 3093
3075 ture, leading to $\pm 9\%$ variation in dE/dx , 3094
3076 corrected by a single overall multiplicative 3095
3077 constant;
- 3078 • differences in cell geometry and charge col- 3096
3079 lection ($\pm 8\%$ variation), corrected by a set 3097
3080 of multiplicative constants for each wire;
- 3081 • signal saturation due to space charge build- 3100
3082 up ($\pm 11\%$ variation), corrected by a second- 3101

order polynomial in the dip angle, λ , of the form $1/\sqrt{\sin^2 \lambda + \text{const}}$;

- non-linearities in the most probable energy loss at large dip angles ($\pm 2.5\%$ variation), corrected with a fourth-order Chebychev polynomial as a function of λ ; and
- variation of cell charge collection as a function entrance angle ($\pm 2.5\%$ variation), corrected using a sixth-order Chebychev polynomial in the entrance angle.

The overall gas gain is updated continuously based on calibrations derived as part of prompt reconstruction of the colliding beam data; the remaining corrections are determined once for a given HV voltage setting and gas mixture.

Corrections applied at the single cell level can be large compared to the single-cell dE/dx resolution, but have only a modest impact on the average resolution of the ensemble of hits. Global

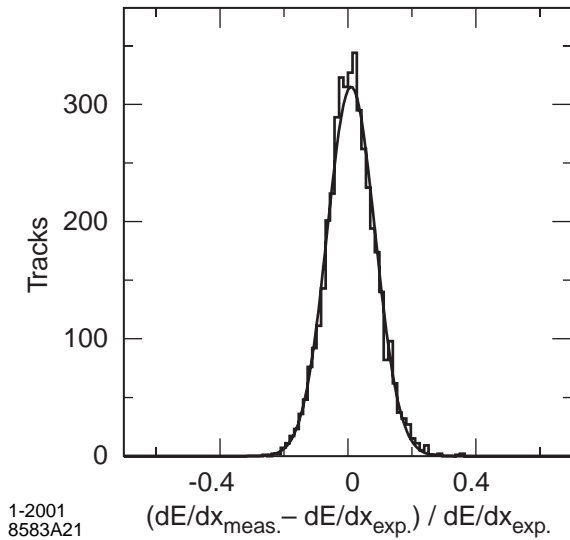


Figure 36. Difference between the measured and expected energy loss dE/dx for e^\pm from Bhabha scattering, measured in the DCH at an operating voltage of 1900 V.

corrections applied to all hits on a track are therefore the most important for the resolution.

Figure 35 shows the distribution of the corrected dE/dx measurements as a function of track momenta. The superimposed Bethe-Bloch predictions for particles of different masses have been determined from selected control samples.

The measured dE/dx resolution for Bhabha events is shown in Figure 36. The performance achieved to date is typically 7.5%, limited by the number of samples and Landau fluctuations. This value is close to the expected resolution of 7%. Further refinements and additional corrections are being considered to improve performance.

6.9. Conclusions

The drift chamber has been performing close to design expectations from the start of operations. With the exception of a small number of wires that were damaged by an unfortunate HV incident during the commissioning phase, all cells are fully operational. The DCH performance has proven very stable over time. The design goal for

the intrinsic position and dE/dx resolution have been met. Backgrounds are acceptable at present beam currents, but there is concern for rising occupancies and DAQ capacity at the high end of the planned luminosity upgrades.

REFERENCES

1. Celenex 3300-2 polyester thermoplastic with 30% silica glass fiber
2. E. Borsato et al., Nucl. Instr. and Methods A451 (2000) 414.
3. Luma Metall AB, Kalmar, Sweden.
4. California Fine Wire, Grover Beach, CA, USA.
5. A. Berenyi et al., IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci. 46 (1999), 348; *ibid.* 46 (1999) 928.
6. J. Albert et al., IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci. 46 (1999) 2027; A. Bouchan et al., Nucl. Instr. and Methods A409 (1998) 46; G. Sciolla et al., Nucl. Instr. and Methods A419 (1998) 310.
7. D. Dorfan et al., Nucl. Instr. and Methods A409 (1998) 310.
8. S.F. Dow et al., IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci. 46 (1999) 785.
9. CAEN SY527 HV mainframe by CAEN, Viareggio, Italy.
10. Y. Karyotakis, D. Boutigny, LAPP Annecy, *private communication*.
11. Garfield: Simulation of Gaseous Detectors, CERN Program Library (1992).

7. Drift Chamber

3155 8. Charged Particle Tracking

3156 The principal purpose of the *BABAR* charged
3157 particle tracking systems, the SVT and the DCH,
3158 is the efficient detection of charged particles and
3159 the measurement of their momentum and angles
3160 with high precision. Among many applications,
3161 these high precision measurements allow for the
3162 reconstruction of exclusive *B* and *D* meson decays
3163 with high resolution and thus minimal back-
3164 ground.

3165 The reconstruction of multiple decay vertices
3166 of weakly decaying *B* and *D* mesons, is of prime
3167 importance to the physics goals of *BABAR*. The
3168 design goal was to achieve a mean spatial resolu-
3169 tion for each *B* decay vertex along the *z*-axis of
3170 better than 80 μm .

3171 Track measurements are also important for the
3172 extrapolation to the DIRC, EMC, and IFR. At
3173 lower momenta the DCH measurements are more
3174 important, while at higher momenta the SVT
3175 measurements dominate. Most critical are the
3176 angles at the DIRC, because the uncertainties in
3177 the charged particle track parameters add to the
3178 uncertainty in the measurement of the Cherenkov
3179 angle. Thus the track errors from the combined
3180 SVT and DCH measurements should be small
3181 compared to the average DIRC angle measure-
3182 ments, i.e., of order of 1 mrad, particularly at the
3183 highest momenta.

3184 Charged particle tracking has been studied
3185 with large samples of cosmic ray muons, e^+e^- ,
3186 $\mu^+\mu^-$, and $\tau^+\tau^-$ events, as well as multi-hadrons.
3187 At this time, these studies are far from complete
3188 and the results are still preliminary. In partic-
3189 ular, many issues related to the intrinsic align-
3190 ment of the SVT, the variation with time of the
3191 relative alignment of the SVT and the DCH, and
3192 movement of the beam position relative to *BABAR*
3193 remain under study.

3194 8.1. Track Reconstruction

3195 The reconstruction of charged particle tracks
3196 relies on data from both tracking system, the SVT
3197 and the DCH. Charged tracks are defined by five
3198 parameters ($d_0, \phi_0, \omega, z_0, \tan\lambda$) and their associ-
3199 ated error matrix. These parameters are mea-
3200 sured at the point of closest approach to the *z*-

3201 axis; d_0 and z_0 are the distances of this point from
3202 the origin of the coordinate system in the *x* – *y*
3203 plane and along the *z*-axis, respectively. The an-
3204 gle ϕ_0 is the azimuth of the track, λ the dip angle
3205 relative to the transverse plane, and $\omega = 1/p_t$ is
3206 its curvature. d_0 and ω are signed variables; their
3207 sign depends on the charge of the track. The
3208 track finding and the fitting procedures make use
3209 of Kalman filter algorithm [1] that takes into ac-
3210 count the detailed distribution of material in the
3211 detector and the full map of the magnetic field.

3212 The off-line charged particle track reconstruc-
3213 tion builds on information available from the L3
3214 trigger and tracking algorithm. It begins with an
3215 improvement of the event start time t_0 , obtained
3216 from a fit to the parameters d_0 , ϕ_0 , and t_0 based
3217 on the four-hit track segments in the DCH super-
3218 layers. The next step is to select tracks in the
3219 DCH by performing helix fits to the hits found
3220 by the L3 track finding algorithm. A search for
3221 additional hits in the DCH that may belong on
3222 these tracks is performed, while t_0 is further im-
3223 proved by using only hits associated with tracks.
3224 Two more sophisticated tracking procedures are
3225 applied which are designed to find tracks that ei-
3226 ther pass through fewer than the full ten DCH
3227 superlayers or do not originate from the interac-
3228 tion point. These algorithms use primarily track
3229 segments that have not already been assigned to
3230 other tracks, and thus benefit from a progressively
3231 cleaner tracking environment with a constantly
3232 improving t_0 . At the end of this process, tracks
3233 are fit again using a Kalman filter fit.

3234 The resulting tracks are then extrapolated into
3235 the SVT, and SVT track segments are added pro-
3236 vided they are consistent with the expected error
3237 in the extrapolation through the intervening ma-
3238 terial and inhomogeneous magnetic field. Among
3239 the possible SVT segments, those with the small-
3240 est residuals and the largest number of SVT layers
3241 are retained and a Kalman fit is performed to the
3242 full set of DCH and SVT hits.

3243 Any remaining SVT hits are then passed to
3244 two complementary stand-alone track finding al-
3245 gorithms. The first reconstructs tracks starting
3246 with triplets of space points (matched ϕ and *z*
3247 hits) in layers 1, 3 and 5 of the SVT, and adding
3248 consistent space points from the other layers. A

3249 minimum of four space points are required to form
 3250 a good track. This algorithm is efficient over a
 3251 wide range of impact parameters and z_0 values.
 3252 The second algorithm starts with circle trajec-
 3253 tories from ϕ hits and then adds z hits to form
 3254 helices. This algorithm is less sensitive to large
 3255 combinatorics and to missing z information for
 3256 some of the SVT modules.

3257 Finally, an attempt is made to combine tracks
 3258 that are only found by one of the two tracking sys-
 3259 tems and thus recover pattern recognition prob-
 3260 lems caused by multiple scattering at the support
 3261 tube. The relative alignment of the two tracking
 3262 devices and the internal alignment of the SVT
 3263 modules are discussed in Chapter 5.

3264 8.2. Tracking Efficiency

3265 The efficiency for reconstructing tracks in the
 3266 DCH has been measured as a function of trans-
 3267 verse momentum, polar and azimuthal angles in
 3268 multi-track events, as well as the charged track
 3269 multiplicity. These measurements rely on specific
 3270 final states and exploit the fact that the track re-
 3271 construction can be performed independently in
 3272 the two tracking devices, the SVT and the DCH.

3273 A comparison of the tracking efficiency in data
 3274 and Monte Carlo simulation has been performed
 3275 for a sample of $\tau^+\tau^-$ pairs with 1-prong plus 3-
 3276 prong decay topology. The events are selected
 3277 without any requirements on the third track of
 3278 the 3-prong decay, and the fraction of events
 3279 for which all tracks are successfully reconstructed
 3280 provides a measurement of the overall reconstruc-
 3281 tion efficiency for tracks in the range $0.2 < p_t <$
 3282 $3.0 \text{ GeV}/c$. Initial results indicated that the mea-
 3283 sured tracking efficiency was lower than expected
 3284 from the simulations. Since then, a number of
 3285 improvements in the track finding software have
 3286 been made, and the DCH operating voltage was
 3287 raised by 60 V to the design value of 1960 V.
 3288 These measures have restored the efficiency for
 3289 data close to the expected level.

3290 The absolute DCH tracking efficiency is deter-
 3291 mined as the ratio of reconstructed DCH tracks
 3292 to the tracks detected in the SVT with the re-
 3293 quirement that they fall within the acceptance
 3294 of the DCH. Corrections are made for fake tracks
 3295 in the SVT and DCH as well as for a bias in the

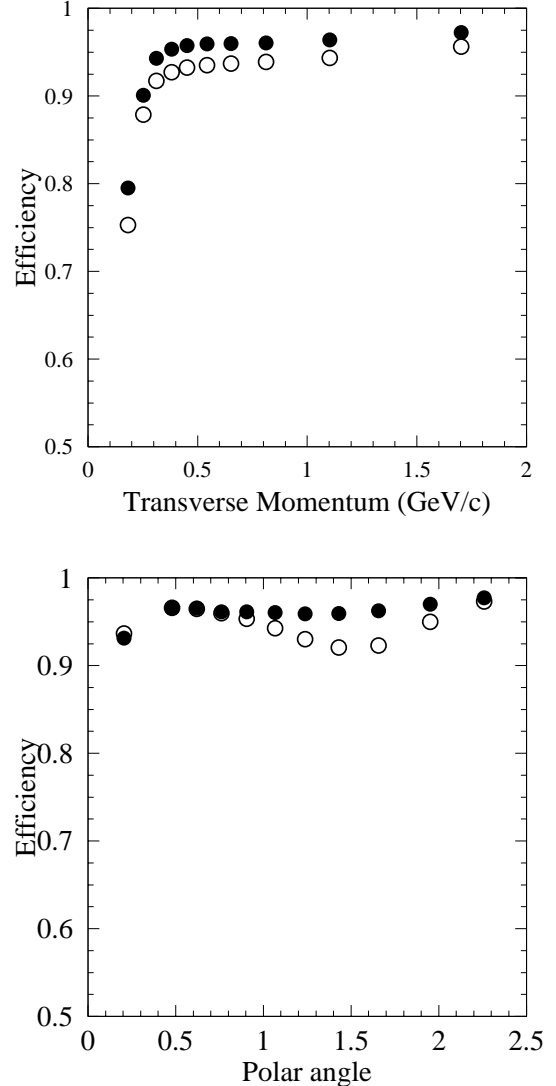


Figure 37. DCH track reconstruction efficiency at operating voltages of 1900 V and 1960 V, as a function of a) transverse momentum, and b) polar angle. The efficiency is measured in multi-hadron events as a fraction all tracks detected in the SVT for which the DCH portion is also reconstructed.

track finding algorithms. Such studies have been performed for different samples of multi-hadron events. Figure 37 shows the result of one such study for the two voltage settings. The results of the different samples agree well within the estimated error. For 1900 V, the data show a reduction in efficiency by about 5% at close to normal incidence, indicating that the cells are not fully efficient at this voltage. At the design voltage of 1960 V, the efficiency averages $(98 \pm 1)\%$ per track of more than 200 MeV/c and polar angle $\theta > 0.5$. The errors of the measurements are dominated by the uncertainty in the contamination of SVT tracks.

As a cross-check and measure of systematic uncertainties in the above method, an analysis is performed using a sample of $D^0 \rightarrow K^- \pi^+ \pi^+ \pi^-$ decays, where the D^0 is reconstructed from the decay $D^{*+} \rightarrow D^0 \pi^+$. All of the tracks from the D^0 decay are required to have SVT hits and the fraction of D^0 for which all four tracks have DCH tracks is taken as the relative DCH tracking efficiency. The results agree with the more inclusive method to within the estimated error of 1%.

The stand-alone SVT tracking algorithms have a high efficiency for tracks with low transverse momentum, which do not reach the drift chamber, as illustrated in Figure 38. This feature is very important for the detection of D^* decays which is used for a variety of inclusive studies of B and D mesons. To study the efficiency, the decays $D^{*+} \rightarrow D^0 \pi^+$ are selected by reconstructing events of the type $\bar{B} \rightarrow D^{*+} X$ followed by $D^{*+} \rightarrow D^0 \pi^+ \rightarrow K^- \pi^+ \pi^+$, where the pion from the D^* decay has a soft momentum spectrum. The majority of these low momentum tracks do not reach the inner layers of the DCH, their momentum resolution is in most cases limited by multiple scattering, but the production angle can be determined from the hits in innermost layers of the SVT. Figure 38 shows the momentum of the slow pions and the mass difference $\Delta M = M(K^- \pi^+ \pi^+) - M(K^- \pi^+)$, for the total sample and the subsample of events in which the slow pion has been reconstructed in both the SVT and the DCH. To derive an estimate of the tracking efficiency for these low momentum tracks, a detailed Monte Carlo simulation was performed.

In particular, the spectrum of the pions was derived from simulation of the inclusive D^* production in $B\bar{B}$ events, and the events were selected in the same way as for the data. Contributions for non- $B\bar{B}$ events were subtracted. A comparison of the detected slow pions spectra with the Monte Carlo prediction is presented in Figure 39. Also shown is the detection efficiency derived from the Monte Carlo simulation, which is taken as an estimate, based on the good agreement between the spectra. While there is some remaining concern about adequate details in the simulation of the SVT, one can conclude that the SVT significantly extends the capability of the charged particle detection of tracks down to transverse momenta of ~ 50 MeV/c.

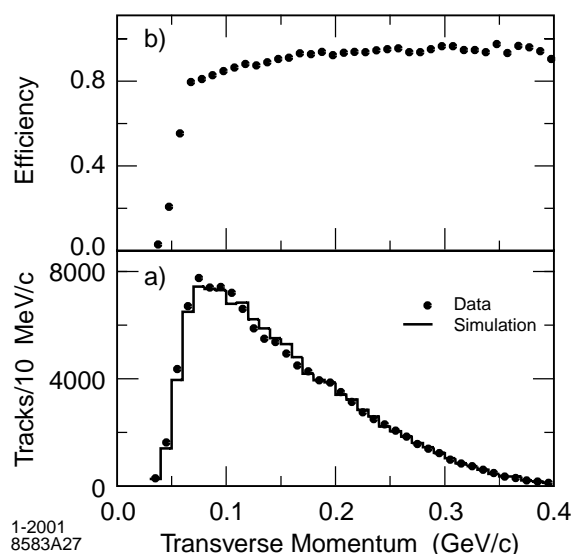


Figure 39. Monte Carlo studies of low momentum tracking in the SVT a) comparison of data (non-resonant data have been subtracted) and simulation of the transverse momentum spectrum of pions from $D^{*+} \rightarrow D^0 \pi^+$ in $B\bar{B}$ events, and b) efficiency for pion detection derived from simulated events.

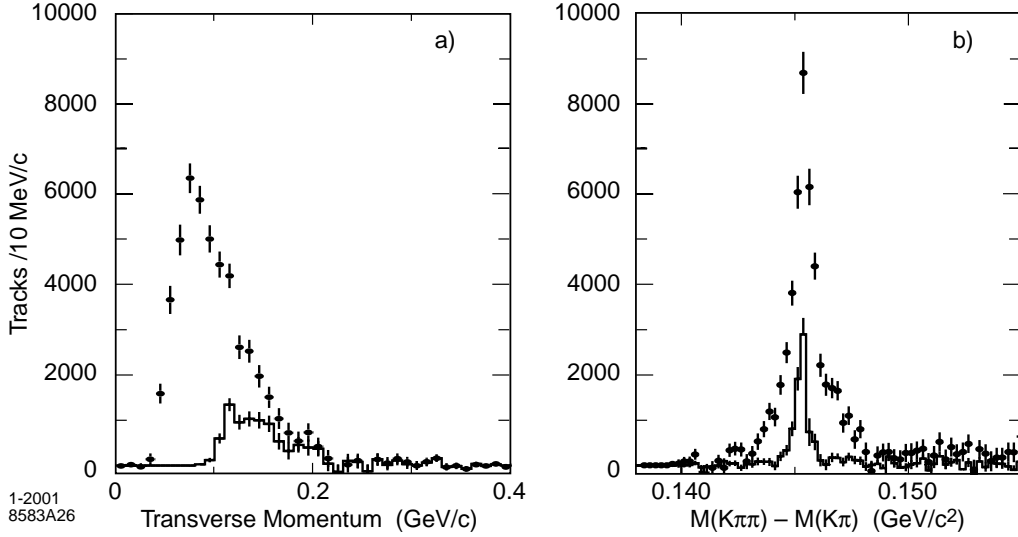


Figure 38. Reconstruction of low momentum tracks in the SVT: a) Transverse momentum spectrum of pions from $D^{*+} \rightarrow D^0 \pi^+$ in $B\bar{B}$ events, and b) the mass difference, $\Delta M = M(K^- \pi^+ \pi^+) - M(K^- \pi^+)$, both for all detected events and for events in which the slow pion track is reconstructed both in the SVT and DCH. Non-resonant data have been subtracted.

8.3. Track Parameter Resolutions

The resolution in the five track parameters is monitored in OPR using e^+e^- and $\mu^+\mu^-$ pair events. It is further investigated off-line for tracks in multi-hadron events and cosmic ray muons.

Cosmic rays that are recorded during normal data-taking offer a simple way of measuring the resolution of track resolution. The upper and lower halves of the muon tracks traversing the DCH are fit as two separate tracks, and the resolution measurements are taken from the difference of the measured parameters for the two track halves. To assure that the tracks pass close to the beam interaction point, cuts are applied on the d_0 , z_0 , and $\tan \lambda$. The results of this comparison for the impact parameters and the angles are shown in Figure 40 for tracks with momenta above p_t of 3 GeV/c. The distributions for the impact parameters and the angles are symmetric; the non-Gaussian tails are small. The z_0 and $\tan \lambda$ distributions show a clear off-set, attributed to residual problems with the internal alignment of the SVT. Based on the full width at half maxi-

um of these distributions the resolutions for single tracks are

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{d_0} &= 23 \mu m & \sigma_{z_0} &= 29 \mu m \\ \sigma_{\phi_0} &= 0.43 \text{ mrad} & \sigma_{\tan \lambda} &= 0.53 \cdot 10^{-3}. \end{aligned}$$

The dependence of the resolution in the impact parameter, d_0 and z_0 , on the transverse momentum p_t is presented in Figure 41. The measurement is based on tracks in multi-hadron events. The resolution is determined as the width of the distribution of the difference between the measured impact parameters, d_0 and z_0 , and the coordinates of the vertex reconstructed from the remaining tracks in the event. These distributions peak at zero, but have a tail for positive values due to the effect of weak decays. Consequently, only the negative part of the distributions reflects the measurement error and is used in the Gaussian fit. Event shape cuts and a cut on the χ^2 of the vertex fit are applied to further reduce the effect of weak decay on this measurement. The contribution from the vertex errors are removed from the measured resolutions in quadrature. The d_0

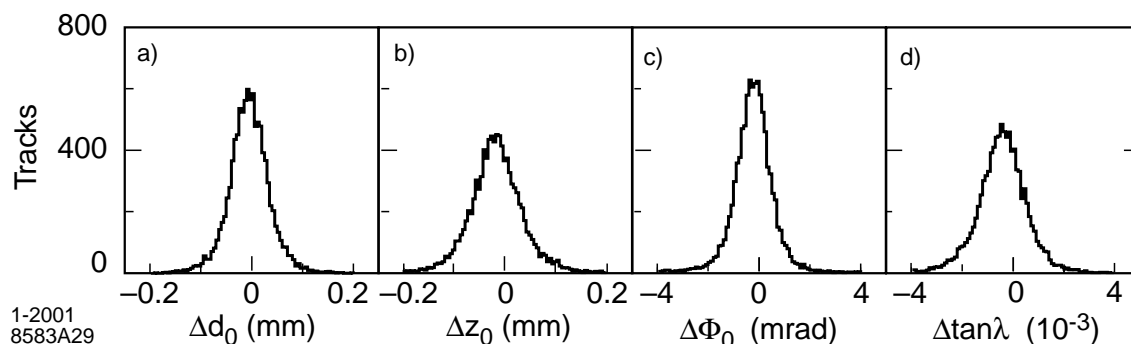


Figure 40. Resolution for track parameters of cosmic ray muons reconstructed in the SVT and DCH. The resolution is measured as the difference between the fitted track parameters of the two halves of cosmic ray tracks; a) d_0 , b) z_0 , c) ϕ_0 , and d) $\tan \lambda$.

3405 and z_0 resolutions so measured are about $25 \mu\text{m}$
 3406 and $40 \mu\text{m}$ respectively at $p_t = 3 \text{ GeV}/c$ and
 3407 above. These values agree well with expectations
 3408 and Monte Carlo simulation, and are also in rea-
 3409 sonable agreement with the results obtained from
 3410 cosmic rays.

3411 While the impact parameter and angle mea-
 3412 surements near the IP are dominated by the SVT
 3413 measurements, the DCH contributes primarily to
 3414 the p_t measurement. Figure 42 shows the reso-
 3415 lution in the transverse momentum derived from
 3416 cosmic muons. The data are well represented by
 3417 a linear, rather than the usual quadratic function,

$$3418 \frac{\sigma_{p_t}}{p_t} = (0.13 \pm 0.01)\% \cdot p_t + (0.45 \pm 0.03)\%,$$

3419 where the transverse momentum p_t is measured
 3420 in GeV/c . These values for the resolution param-
 3421 eters are very close to the initial estimates and
 3422 are well reproduced by Monte Carlo simulations.
 3423 More sophisticated treatment of the DCH time-
 3424 to-distance relations and overall resolution func-
 3425 tion are presently under study.

3426 8.4. Conclusions

3427 The two tracking devices, the SVT and DCH,
 3428 have been performing close to design expectations
 3429 from the start of operations. Studies of track reso-
 3430 lution at lower momenta and as a function of
 3431 polar and azimuthal angles are still under way.
 3432 Likewise, the position and angular resolution at

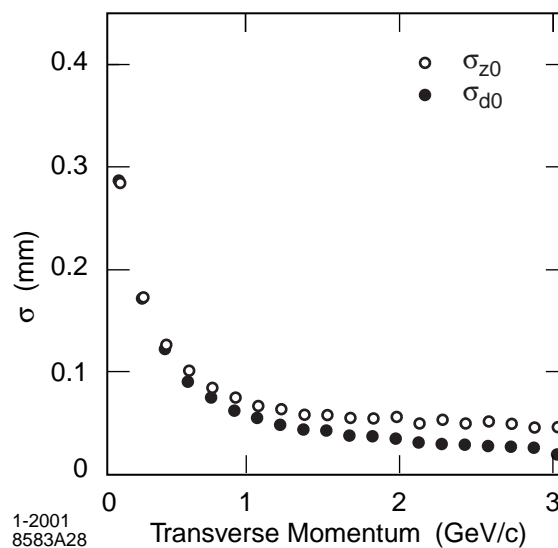
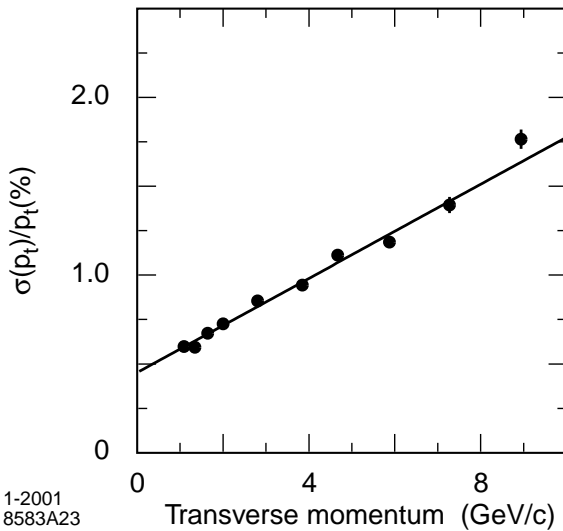


Figure 41. Impact parameter resolution for tracks in multi-hadron events as a function of the transverse momentum, in the $x - y$ plane and for the projection on the z -axis. The data are corrected for the impact of particle decays and vertexing errors.

3433 the entrance to the DIRC or EMC are still being
 3434 studied. Such measurements are very sensitive to
 3435 internal alignment of the SVT and relative place-



1-2001
8583A23

Figure 42. Resolution in the transverse momentum p_t determined from cosmic ray muons traversing the DCH and SVT.

ment of the SVT and the DCH. A better understanding will not only reduce the mass resolution for the reconstruction of exclusive states, it will also be particularly important for improvement of the performance of the DIRC.

REFERENCES

1. Kalman Filter reference needed here

9. Tracking

10. DIRC

10.1. Purpose and Design Requirements

The study of CP-violation using hadronic final states of the $B\bar{B}$ meson system requires the ability to tag the flavor of one of the B mesons via the cascade decay $b \rightarrow c \rightarrow s$, while fully reconstructing the final state of the other over a large region of solid angle and momentum. The momenta of the kaons used for flavor tagging extend up to about 2 GeV/c, with most below 1 GeV/c. On the other hand, pions from the rare two-body decays $B^0 \rightarrow \pi^+\pi^-$ ($K^-\pi^+$) must be well-separated from kaons, and have momenta between 1.5 and 4.5 GeV/c with a strong momentum-polar angle correlation between the tracks (higher momenta occur at the more forward angles because of the c.m. system boost) [1].

The particle identification (PID) system inside the calorimeter volume should be thin and uniform in radiation lengths (to minimize degradation of the calorimeter energy resolution) and thin in the radial dimension to reduce the volume, hence, the cost of the calorimeter. Finally, for high-luminosity running conditions, the PID system must have fast signal response, and be able to tolerate high backgrounds.

The PID system being used in *BABAR* is a new kind of ring imaging detector called the DIRC [2] (the acronym DIRC stands for detection of internally reflected Cherenkov light). It is expected to be able to provide π/K separation of $\sim 4\sigma$ or greater, for all tracks from B meson decays with momentum greater than 600 MeV/c. Particle identification below 700 MeV/c is provided by dE/dx measurements in the DCH and SVT.

The DIRC is a ring imaging Cherenkov detector, based on the principle that the magnitudes of angles are maintained upon reflection from a flat surface. Figure 43 shows a schematic of the DIRC geometry that illustrates the principles of light production, transport, and imaging. The radiator material of the DIRC is synthetic fused silica in the form of long, thin bars with rectangular cross section. These bars serve both as radiators and as light pipes for the portion of the light trapped in the radiator by total internal reflection. Fused

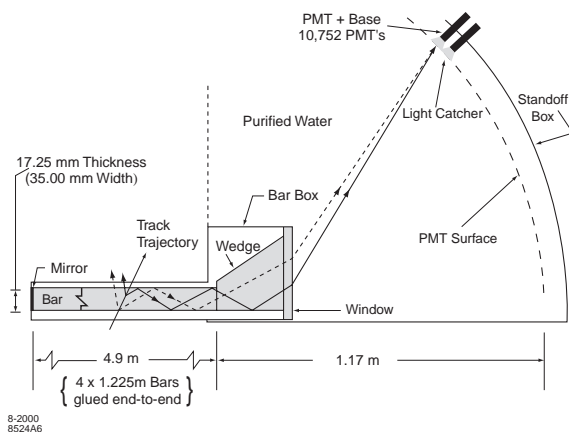


Figure 43. Schematics of the DIRC fused silica radiator bar and imaging region. Not shown is a 6 mrad angle on the bottom surface of the wedge (see text).

silica (Spectrosil [3]) is chosen because of its resistance to ionizing radiation, its large index of refraction, low chromatic dispersion, long attenuation length, and because it allows an excellent optical finish on the surfaces of the bars [4].

The variable θ_c is used to designate the Cherenkov angle, ϕ_c denotes the azimuthal angle of the Cherenkov photon around the track direction, and n represents the mean index of refraction of fused silica ($n = 1.473$), with the familiar relation $\cos \theta_c = 1/n\beta$.

For particles with $\beta \approx 1$, some photons will always lie within the total internal reflection limit, and will be transported to either one or both ends of the bar, depending on the particle incident angle. To avoid having to instrument both bar ends with photon detectors, a mirror is placed at the forward end, perpendicular to the bar axis, to reflect incident photons to the backward (instrumented) bar end.

Once photons arrive at the instrumented end, most of them emerge into a water-filled expansion region, called the standoff box. A fused silica wedge at the exit of the bar reflects photons at large angles and thereby reduces the size of the required detection surface. The photons are

detected by an array of densely packed photomultiplier tubes (PMTs), each surrounded by reflecting “light catcher” cones [5] to capture light which would otherwise miss the PMT active area. The PMTs are placed about 1.2 m from the bar end. The expected Cherenkov light pattern at this surface is essentially a conic section, whose cone opening-angle is the Cherenkov production angle modified by refraction at the exit from the fused silica window.

The DIRC is intrinsically a three-dimensional imaging device. Photons are focused onto the phototube detection surface via a “pin-hole” defined by the exit aperture of the bar, so that the photon propagation angles can be measured in two-dimensional space (α_x, α_y). The time taken for the photon to travel down the bar is also related to the photon propagation angle (α_z) with respect to the bar axis. As the track position and angles are known from the tracking system, these three α angles can be used to (over-)determine the two Cherenkov angles (θ_c, ϕ_c). Imaging in the DIRC occurs in all three of these dimensions, by recording the time at which a given PMT is hit. This over-constraint on the angles is particularly useful in dealing with ambiguities (see below) and high background rates.

10.2. Mechanical Design/Physical Description

The DIRC bars are arranged in a 12-sided polygonal barrel. Because of the beam energy asymmetry, particles are produced preferentially forward in the laboratory. To minimize interference with other detector subsystems in the forward region, the DIRC photon detector is placed at the backward end.

The principal components of the DIRC are shown schematically in Figs. 44,45. The bars are placed into 12 hermetically sealed containers, called bar boxes, made of very thin aluminum-hexcel panels. Dry nitrogen gas flows through each box, and is monitored for humidity to ensure that the bar box/water interface remains tightly sealed. Each bar box, shown in Figure 45, in turn contains 12 long bars, for a total of 144 long bars. Within a bar box the twelve bars are optically isolated by a $\sim 150 \mu\text{m}$ air gap between neighboring

3564 bars, enforced by custom shims made from alu-
 3565 minium foil.

3566 The bars are 17 mm thick, 35 mm wide, and
 3567 4.9 m long. Each long bar is assembled from
 3568 four 1.225 m “short” bars that are glued end-to-
 3569 end; that length being the longest high-quality
 3570 bar currently obtainable from industry [4].

3571 The bars are supported at 600 mm intervals on
 3572 small nylon buttons for optical isolation from the
 3573 bar box. Each long bar has a fused silica wedge
 3574 glued to it at the readout end. The wedge is made
 3575 of the same material as the bar, 91 mm long with
 3576 very nearly the same width as the bars (33 mm)
 3577 and a trapezoidal profile (27 mm high at bar end,
 3578 and 79 mm at the light exit end). The bottom of
 3579 the wedge has a slight (~ 6 mrad) upward slope
 3580 to minimize the displacement of the downward
 3581 reflected image due to the finite bar thickness.
 3582 The wedges are glued to a 10 mm thick fused
 3583 silica window, which provides the interface and
 3584 seal to the purified water in the standoff box.

3585 The mechanical support of the DIRC, shown
 3586 in Figure 44, is cantilevered from the iron of the
 3587 instrumented flux return (IFR). The strong sup-
 3588 port tube (SST) is a steel cylinder located inside
 3589 the end-doors of the IFR and provides the basic
 3590 support for the entire DIRC. It, in turn, is sup-
 3591 ported by an iron support gusset that fixes the
 3592 SST to the Barrel magnet iron. It also minimizes
 3593 the magnetic flux gap caused by the DIRC bars
 3594 extending through the IFR, and supports the ax-
 3595 ial load of the inner magnetic plug surrounding
 3596 the beam in this region.

3597 The bar boxes are supported in the active re-
 3598 gion by an aluminum tube, the central support
 3599 tube (CST), attached to the SST via an alu-
 3600 minium transition flange. The CST is a thin,
 3601 double-walled, cylindrical shell, using aircraft-
 3602 type construction with stressed aluminum skins
 3603 and bulkheads having riveted or glued joints. The
 3604 CST also provides the support for the drift cham-
 3605 ber.

3606 The standoff box is made of stainless steel,
 3607 consisting of a cone, cylinder, and 12 sectors of
 3608 PMTs. It contains about 6,000 liters of purified
 3609 water. Water is used to fill this region be-
 3610 cause it is inexpensive, has an index of refraction
 3611 ($n \sim 1.346$) reasonably close to that of fused sil-

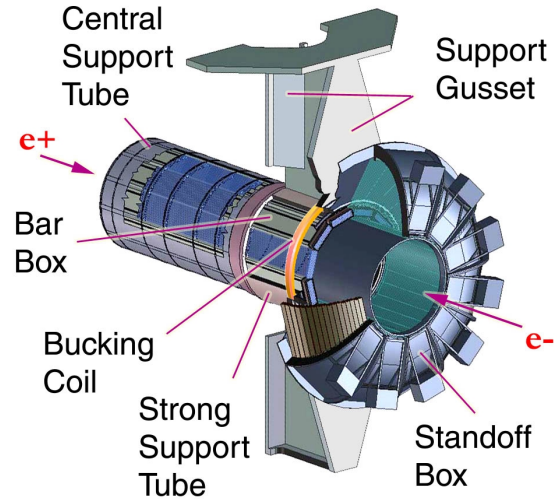


Figure 44. Exploded view of the DIRC mechanical support structure.

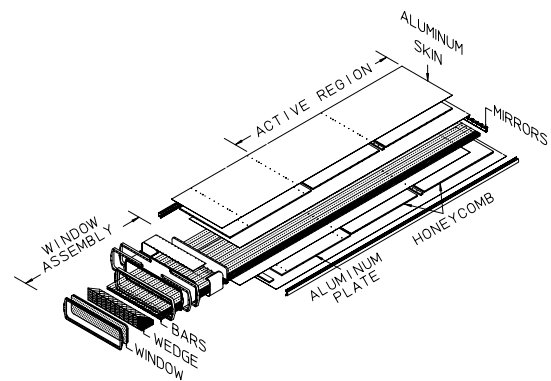


Figure 45. Schematics of the bar box assembly.

3612 ica, thus minimizing the total internal reflection
 3613 at their interface, and its chromaticity index is
 3614 a close match to that of fused silica, effectively
 3615 eliminating dispersion at the silica-water inter-
 3616 face. The iron gusset supports the standoff box.
 3617 An iron shield, supplemented by a bucking coil,

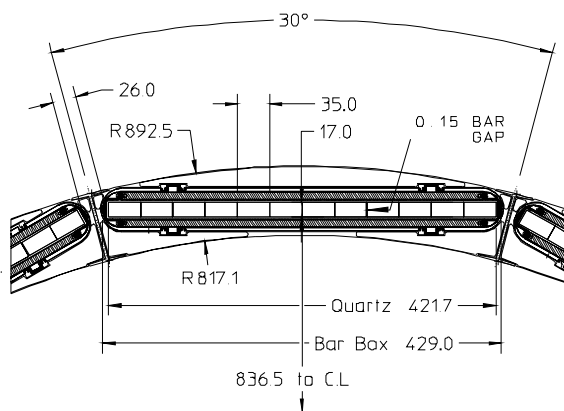


Figure 47. 1/6 cross-section view of the nominal DIRC system geometry. All dimensions are given in mm.

surrounds the standoff box to reduce the field in the PMT region to below 1 Gauss [7].

The PMTs at the rear of the standoff box lie on a surface that is approximately toroidal. Each of the 12 PMT sectors contains 896 PMTs (ETL model 9125 [8,9]) with 29-mm diameter, closely packed, inside the water volume. Each PMT is mounted from the inside of the standoff box and is connected via a feed-through to a base mounted outside. A hexagonal “light catcher” cone is mounted in front of the photocathode of each PMT, which results in an effective active surface area light collection fraction of about 90%. The geometry of the DIRC is shown in an elevation view and a cross-section in Figures 46 and 47.

The DIRC occupies 80 mm of radial space in the central detector volume including supports and construction tolerances, with a total radiation length thickness of about 19% at normal incidence. The radiator bars subtend about 94% of the azimuthal angle and 87% of the center-of-mass polar angle cosine.

The distance from the end of the bar to the PMTs is 1.174 m, which together with the size of the bars and PMTs, gives a geometric contribution to the single photon Cherenkov angle resolution of ~ 7 mrad. This is a bit larger than the

resolution contribution from the photon production (dominated by a ~ 5.4 mrad chromatic term) and transmission dispersions. The overall single photon resolution expected is about 9 mrad.

10.2.1. Cherenkov Photon Detection Efficiency

Figure 48 shows the contribution of various optical and electronic components of the DIRC to the Cherenkov photon detection efficiency (number of detected photoelectrons per Cherenkov photon) as a function of wavelength. The data pertain to a particle entering the center of the bar at 90° . A typical design goal for the photon transport in the bar was that no single component specification should be responsible for more than 10–20% loss of detection efficiency. To satisfy this requirement implied an extremely high internal reflection coefficient of the bar surfaces (greater than 0.9992 per bounce), so that about 80% of the light is maintained after multiple bounces down the bars: 365 bounces in the example of Figure 48. The ultraviolet cut-off is ~ 300 nm, determined by the epoxy (Epotek 301-2 [10]) used to glue the fused silica bars together. The dominant contributor to the overall detection efficiency is the quantum efficiency of the photomultiplier tube, taken from the manufacturer’s data. On the basis of these data, and taking into account wavelength independent factors such as the PMT packing fraction and the geometrical efficiency for trapping Cherenkov photons in the fused silica bars via total internal reflection, the number of expected photoelectrons (N_{pe}) is ~ 28 for a $\beta = 1$ particle entering normal to the surface at the center of a bar.

10.2.2. DIRC Water System

The DIRC water system is designed to maintain good transparency at wavelengths as small as 300 nm. The only sure way to do this is to use ultra-pure, de-ionized water, close to the theoretical limit of $18 M\Omega/cm$ resistivity. In addition, the water must be de-gassed and the entire system kept free of bacteria. To maintain the necessary level of water quality, all components are made of stainless steel or of polyvinylidene fluoride.

The system contains an input line with six me-

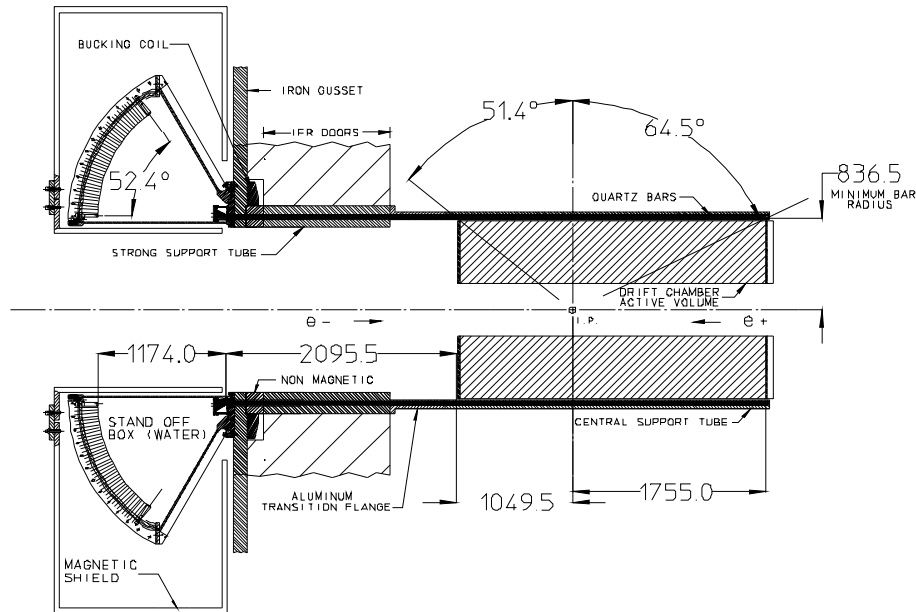


Figure 46. Elevation view of the nominal DIRC system geometry. For clarity, the end plug is not shown. All dimensions are given in mm.

3692 chanical filters (three $10\ \mu\text{m}$, two $5\ \mu\text{m}$, and one
 3693 $1\ \mu\text{m}$), a reverse osmosis unit, de-ionization beds,
 3694 a Teflon microtube de-gasser and various pumps
 3695 and valves. To prevent bacteria growth, it is
 3696 equipped with a UV lamp (254 nm wavelength)
 3697 and filters (two $1\ \mu\text{m}$, two $0.2\ \mu\text{m}$, and charcoal
 3698 filters). Sampling ports are provided to check the
 3699 water quality and to monitor resistivity, temper-
 3700 ature, and flow. A gravity feed return system
 3701 prevents overpressure. The water volume can be
 3702 recirculated up to four times a day.

3703 The operating experience with the water sys-
 3704 tem so far has been very good. The water trans-
 3705 parency is routinely measured using lasers of
 3706 three different wavelengths. The transmission is
 3707 better than 92% per meter at 266 nm and exceeds
 3708 98% per meter at 325 nm and 442 nm.

3709 Potential leaks from the water seals between
 3710 the bar boxes and the standoff box are detected
 3711 by a water leak detection system of 20 custom
 3712 water sensors in and about the bar box slots, two
 3713 commercial ultrasonic flow sensors to monitor wa-

3714 ter flow in two (normally dry) drain lines in addi-
 3715 tion to the twelve humidity sensors on a nitrogen
 3716 gas output line from each bar box (see below).
 3717 Should water be detected, a valve in a 100 mm
 3718 diameter drain line is opened, and all the water
 3719 is drained in about 12 minutes.

3720 10.2.3. DIRC Gas System

3721 Nitrogen gas from boil-off is used to prevent hu-
 3722 midity from condensing on the bars and to detect
 3723 water leaks. The gas flows through each bar box
 3724 at the rate of $100 - 200\ \text{cm}^3/\text{min}$, and is moni-
 3725 tored for humidity to ensure that the seal around
 3726 the bar box/water interface remains tight. The
 3727 gas is filtered through a molecular sieve and three
 3728 mechanical filters to remove particulates ($7\ \mu\text{m}$,
 3729 $0.5\ \mu\text{m}$, and $0.01\ \mu\text{m}$). Dew points of the gas
 3730 returned from the bar boxes are typically -40°C .
 3731 About one third of the input nitrogen gas leaks
 3732 from the bar boxes and keeps the bar box slots in
 3733 the mechanical support structure free of conden-
 3734 sation.

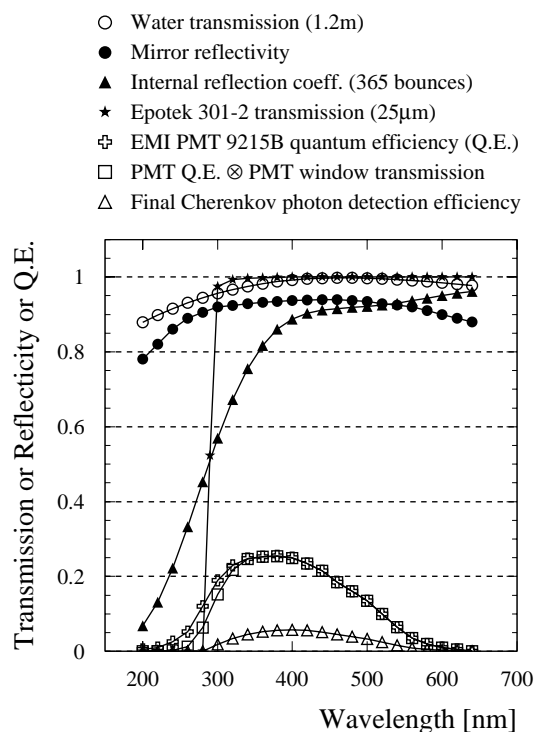


Figure 48. Transmission, reflectivity and quantum efficiency for various components of the DIRC as a function of wavelength for a $\beta = 1$ particle at normal incidence to the center of a bar [11].

10.3. Electronics

10.3.1. DIRC PMT Electronics

The DIRC PMT base system contains a single printed circuit board, equipped with surface mounted components. The operating high voltage (HV) of the PMTs is typically 1.1 kV, with a range between 900 and 1.3 kV.

Groups of 16 tubes are selected for uniformity of gain to allow their operation at a common HV provided from a single distribution board.

The HV is provided by a CAEN SY-527 high voltage distribution system. Each of the 12 sectors receives HV through 56 high voltage channels, distributed through a single cable bundle. Each voltage can be set between 0 and 1.6 kV. A total of 672 high voltage channels are needed for the entire DIRC system.

10.3.2. DIRC Front-End Electronics

The DIRC front-end electronics (FEE) is designed to measure the arrival time of each Cherenkov photon detected by the phototube array [12] to an accuracy that is limited by the intrinsic 1.5 ns transit time spread of the PMTs. In addition, the electronics also allow the photoelectron charge spectra to be measured in calibration mode to ensure that the PMTs operate on the HV plateau. However, because the ADC information is not needed to reconstruct events, 64 PMT are multiplexed onto a single ADC for monitoring and calibration. The design contains a pipeline to deal with the level one trigger latency of 12 μ s, and can handle random background rates of up to 200 kHz/PMT with zero deadtime.

The DIRC FEE is mounted on the outside of the standoff box and highly integrated in order to minimize cable lengths and to retain the required single photo-electron sensitivity. Each of the 168 DIRC front-end boards (DFB) processes 64 PMT inputs, housing eight custom analog chips along with their associated level translators, four custom TDC chips, one 8-bit flash ADC (FADC), two digitally controlled calibration generators, multi-event buffers and test hardware.

The PMT signals are amplified, and pulse shaped by an eight channel analog chip. A digital pulse timed with the peak of the input pulse is output by a zero-crossing discriminator, as well as a pulse shaped by a CR-RC filter with 80 ns peaking time. The 80 ns shaping time was chosen to allow the ADC multiplexing mechanism time to take place. The multiplexer selects the analog channel to be digitized by the FADC for calibration.

The TDC chip [13] is a 16-channel TDC with 0.5 ns binning, input buffering and selective readout of the data in time with the trigger. To cope with the L1 maximum trigger latency of 12 μ s and jitter of 1 μ s, the selective readout process extracts data in time with the trigger within a programmable time window. The acceptance window width (latency) is programmable between 64 ns and 2 μ s (16 μ s) and is typically set at 600 ns. The six read-out modules (ROMs) are connected by 1.2 Gbit/s optical fibers to twelve DIRC crate

3800 controllers (DCCs) that form the interface to the
3801 DIRC VME front-end crates.

3802 10.3.3. DAQ Feature Extraction

3803 Raw data from the DFBs are processed in
3804 the ROMs by a feature extraction algorithm be-
3805 fore being transmitted to the segment and event
3806 builder. This software algorithm reduces the data
3807 volume by roughly 50% under typical background
3808 conditions. DFB data that contain errors are
3809 flagged and discarded. The only data errors seen
3810 to date have been traced to damaged DFBs. Be-
3811 cause the dataflow system can reliably transmit
3812 at most 32 kBytes/crate, the feature extraction
3813 must sometimes truncate data to limit the event
3814 size. Hit data are replaced with a per-DFB oc-
3815 cupancy summary when a ROM's hit occupancy
3816 exceeds 56%, which occurs in roughly one in 10^4
3817 events. An appropriate flag is inserted into the
3818 feature extraction output whenever truncation or
3819 deletion occurs. Errors, truncation, and feature
3820 extraction performance are continuously moni-
3821 tored online.

3822 10.3.4. DIRC Calibration

3823 The DIRC uses two independent approaches for
3824 a calibration of the *a priori* unknown PMT time
3825 response and the delays introduced by the front-
3826 end electronics chain and the fast control system.
3827 The first is a conventional pulser calibration, and
3828 the second uses reconstructed tracks from colli-
3829 sion data.

3830 The pulser calibration is performed online us-
3831 ing a light pulser system, which generates pre-
3832 cisely timed 1 ns duration pulses of blue LED
3833 light. This light is transmitted through ap-
3834 proximately 47 m long optical fibers to diffusers
3835 mounted on the standoff box wall opposite the
3836 PMT detector surface of each of the 12 DIRC
3837 sectors. The pulser produces roughly 10% pho-
3838 toelectron occupancy nearly uniformly through-
3839 out the standoff box. The LEDs are triggered
3840 by the global fast control calibration strobe com-
3841 mand sent to the DCCs. The DCC triggers an
3842 individual LED for each sector upon receipt of
3843 calibration strobe. Pulses in adjacent sectors are
3844 staggered by 50 ns to prevent light crosstalk be-
3845 tween sectors. The pulser is run at roughly 2

3846 kHz for the time delay calibration. Histograms of
3847 TDC times for each PMT are accumulated in par-
3848 allel in the ROMs, and then fit to an asymmetric
3849 peaked function. About 65,000 light pulses are
3850 used to determine the mean time delay of each
3851 of the PMTs in the standoff box to a statistical
3852 accuracy of better than 0.1 ns. The LED pulser
3853 is also used to monitor the phototube gains using
3854 the ADC readout. As with the TDC calibration,
3855 histograms and fits of the ADC spectrum are ac-
3856 cumulated and fit in the ROM. A calibration run
3857 including both TDC and ADC information for
3858 all PMTs completes in a few minutes, and is run
3859 once per day. Daily calibrations not only verify
3860 the time delays, but allow defective hardware to
3861 be fixed quickly.

3862 The data stream calibration uses reconstructed
3863 tracks from the collision data. For calibration of
3864 the global time delay, the values of uncalibrated
3865 differences of observed and expected arrival times,
3866 δt_γ , are collected during the online prompt recon-
3867 struction processing using all DIRC channels. To
3868 calculate the individual channel calibrations, δt_γ
3869 values for each DIRC channel are accumulated
3870 until sufficient statistics of about 100,000 tracks
3871 are achieved. The collected distribution for each
3872 channel is fitted to extract the global time offset
3873 calibration.

3874 The data stream and online pulser calibrations
3875 of the electronic delays and the PMT time re-
3876 sponse and gain yield fully consistent results, al-
3877 though the data stream results in 15% better tim-
3878 ing resolution than the pulser calibration. The
3879 time delay values per channel are typically stable
3880 to an *rms* of less than 0.1 ns over more than one
3881 year of daily calibrations.

3882 10.3.5. DIRC Environmental Monitoring 3883 System

3884 The DIRC environmental monitoring system is
3885 divided into three parts, corresponding to three
3886 separate tasks. The first deals with the control
3887 and monitoring of the high voltage system for
3888 the photomultipliers. The second is devoted to
3889 monitoring low voltages related to the front-end
3890 electronics. The third controls a variety of other
3891 detector parameter settings. An interlock system,
3892 based on a standard VME module (SIAM), is pro-

3893 vided. For the purposes of the DIRC, three ded- 3940
 3894 icated VME CPUs are running the application 3941
 3895 code. The communication between the HV main- 3942
 3896 frames and the monitoring crate is achieved by a 3943
 3897 CAENET controller (V288). The high voltage 3944
 3898 monitor task controls the step sizes for ramping 3945
 3899 the HV up or down as well as the communication 3946
 3900 of alarm conditions, and the values and limits for 3947
 3901 the HV and current of each channel. 3948

3902 The purpose of FEE monitoring is to control 3949
 3903 and monitor parameters related to the front-end 3950
 3904 electronics. For each DIRC sector, a custom 3951
 3905 multi-purpose board, the DCC, equipped with 3952
 3906 a micro-controller [14] incorporating the appro- 3953
 3907 priate communication protocol (CANbus) is situ- 3954
 3908 ated in the same crate as the DFB. All monitoring 3955
 3909 and control tasks are implemented on this card. 3956
 3910 The parameters monitored are the low voltages 3957
 3911 for the DFBs and DCCs, the status of the optical 3958
 3912 link (Finisar), the temperature on supply boards 3959
 3913 and the VME crate status. 3960

3914 The third part of the monitoring system is 3961
 3915 based on a custom ADC VME board (VSAM) 3962
 3916 used to monitor various type of sensors: magnetic 3963
 3917 field mappers, an ensemble of 12 beam monitor- 3964
 3918 ing scalers, 16 CsI radiation monitors, the level of 3965
 3919 the water in the standoff box as well as the pH-
 3920 value, resistivity and temperature of the water.

3921 10.4. Operational Issues

3922 The DIRC was successfully commissioned and 3966
 3923 attained performance close to that expected from 3967
 3924 Monte Carlo simulation. The DIRC has been 3968
 3925 robust and stable, and indeed, serves also as a 3969
 3926 background detector for PEP-II tuning. Fig- 3970
 3927 ure 49 shows a typical di-muon ($e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-$) 3971
 3928 event. In addition to the hits caused by the 3972
 3929 Cherenkov light from the two tracks, about 500 3973
 3930 backgrounds hits can be seen in the readout win- 3974
 3931 dows of ± 300 ns. This background is dominated 3975
 3932 by low energy photons from the PEP-II machine 3976
 3933 hitting the standoff box. Some care in machine 3977
 3934 tuning is required to stay under a noise limit of 3978
 3935 about 200 kHz/tube imposed by limited DAQ 3979
 3936 throughput. Lead shielding has been installed 3980
 3937 around the beamline components just outside the 3981
 3938 backward endcap, and has substantially reduced 3982
 3939 this background. 3983
 3984
 3985

3940 After about 2 years of running, about 99.7% of
 3941 all PMTs and electronic channels are still operat-
 3942 ing with nominal performance.

3943 Corrosion of the PMT glass face plates that are
 3944 immersed in the pure water of the standoff box
 3945 has been observed. For most of the tubes, the ob-
 3946 servable effect is typically a slight cloudiness, but
 3947 for ~ 50 of the tubes, it is much more pronounced.
 3948 Extensive R&D has demonstrated that the corro-
 3949 sion is associated with a loss of sodium and boron
 3950 from the surface of the glass. For most tubes, the
 3951 corrosion rate is a few microns per year, and is
 3952 expected to be acceptable for the full projected
 3953 10 year lifetime of the experiment. However, for
 3954 the ~ 50 tubes, the wrong glass was used by the
 3955 PMT manufacturer. This glass did not contain
 3956 zinc, which makes it much more susceptible to
 3957 rapid leaching. This leaching may eventually lead
 3958 to either a loss of performance, or some risk of me-
 3959 chanical failure of the face plates, for these tubes.
 3960 Direct measurements of the number of Cherenkov
 3961 photons observed in di-muon events as a function
 3962 of time suggest that the total loss of photons from
 3963 all sources is less than 2%/year, although the ac-
 3964 curacy of this number is limited by a number of
 3965 systematic effects at this time.

3966 10.5. Data Analysis and Performance

3967 Figure 49 shows the pattern of Cherenkov
 3968 photons in a di-muon event, before and after
 3969 reconstruction. The time distribution of real
 3970 Cherenkov photons from a single event is of order
 3971 ~ 50 ns wide, and during normal data taking they
 3972 are accompanied by hundreds of random photons
 3973 in a flat background within the trigger acceptance
 3974 window. Given a track pointing at a particular
 3975 fused silica bar and a candidate signal in a PMT
 3976 within the optical phase space of that bar, the
 3977 Cherenkov angle is uniquely determined up to a
 3978 sixteen fold ambiguity: top/bottom, left/right,
 3979 forward/backward and wedge/no-wedge reflec-
 3980 tions. The goal of the reconstruction program
 3981 is to associate the correct track with the candi-
 3982 date PMT signal, with the requirement that the
 3983 transit time of the photon from its creation in the
 3984 bar to its detection at the PMT is consistent with
 3985 the measurement error of ~ 1.5 ns.

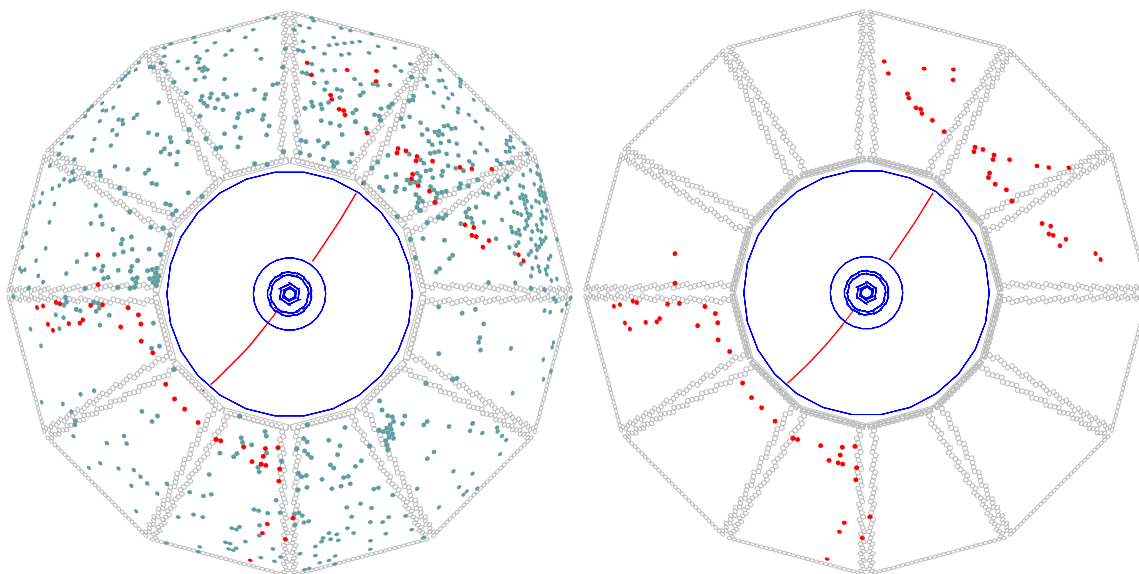


Figure 49. Display of one $e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-$ event reconstructed in *BABAR* with two different time cuts. On the left, all DIRC PMTs that were hit within the ± 300 ns trigger window are shown. On the right, only those PMTs that were hit within 8 ns of the expected Cherenkov photon arrival time are displayed.

10.5.1. Reconstruction

We use an unbinned maximum likelihood formalism to incorporate all information provided by the space and time measurements from the DIRC.

The emission angle and the arrival time of the Cherenkov photons are reconstructed from the observed space-time coordinates of the PMT hits, transformed into the Cherenkov coordinate system. The known spatial position of the bar through which the track passed and the PMTs hit within the readout window of ± 300 ns of the trigger signal is used to calculate the three-dimensional vector pointing from the center of the end of the bar to the center of each tube. This vector is then extrapolated into the synthetic fused silica bar (using Snell's law). This procedure defines, up to the 16 fold ambiguity described above, the Cherenkov angles θ_c and ϕ_c of a photon.

The DIRC time measurement represents the third dimension of the photomultiplier hit reconstruction. The timing resolution is not competitive with the positional information for

Cherenkov angle reconstruction, but timing information is used to suppress background hits from the accelerator and, more importantly, exclude other tracks in the same event as the source of the photon. Timing information is also used to resolve the forward-backward and wedge ambiguities in the hit-to-track association.

The relevant observable to distinguish between signal and background photons is the difference between the measured and expected photon arrival time, δt_γ . It is calculated for each photon using the track time-of-flight (assuming it to be a charged pion), the measured time of the candidate signal in the PMT and the photon propagation time within the bar and the water filled standoff box. The time information and the requirement of using only physically possible photon propagation paths that are within the region of total internal reflection reduces the number of ambiguities from 16 to typically 3. Applying the time information also substantially improves the correct matching of photons with tracks and reduces the number of accelerator induced back-

4032 ground hits by approximately a factor 40, as can
4033 be seen in Figure 49.

4034 The reconstruction routine currently provides a
4035 likelihood value for each of the five stable particle
4036 types (e, μ, π, K, p) if the track passes through the
4037 active volume of the DIRC. These likelihoods are
4038 calculated in an iterative process by maximizing
4039 the likelihood value for the entire event while test-
4040 ing different hypotheses for each track. If enough
4041 photons are found, the result of a fit of θ_c and
4042 the number of observed signal and background
4043 photons are calculated for each track.

4044 10.5.2. Results

4045 The parameters of expected DIRC performance
4046 were derived from extensive studies with a variety
4047 of prototypes, culminating with a full-size proto-
4048 type in a series of test beam runs at CERN [15].
4049 The results were well-described by Monte Carlo
4050 simulations of the detector. The present results
4051 are close to expectations, and additional offline
4052 work, particularly on geometrical alignment, is
4053 expected to lead to further improvements.

4054 In the absence of correlated systematic errors,
4055 the resolution ($\sigma_{C,track}$) on the track Cherenkov
4056 angle should scale as

$$4057 \sigma_{C,track} = \sigma_{C,\gamma} / \sqrt{N_{pe}}, \quad (5)$$

4058 where $\sigma_{C,\gamma}$ is the single photon Cherenkov angle
4059 resolution, and N_{pe} is the number of photons de-
4060 tected. Figure 50(a) shows the single photon res-
4061 olution obtained for photoelectrons from di-muon
4062 events, $e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-$. The average single pho-
4063 ton resolution obtained is about 10.2 mrad, about
4064 10% worse than the expected value of about
4065 9 mrad. There is a broad background of less than
4066 10% relative height under the peak, that origi-
4067 nates mostly from track-associated sources. The
4068 time resolution obtained, shown in Figure 50(b),
4069 is 1.7 ns, close to the 1.5 ns value expected from
4070 the single-photon resolution of the PMTs.

4071 The number of photoelectrons shown in Fig-
4072 ure 51 varies from a minimum of about 20 for
4073 small polar angles at the center of the barrel to
4074 well over 50 at large polar angles. This is in
4075 good agreement with the value expected from the
4076 Monte Carlo simulation at all angles. The shape
4077 of the distribution can be understood as follows:

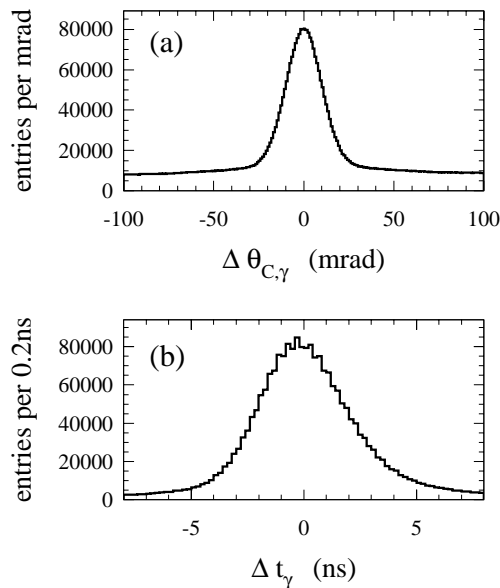


Figure 50. Resolution of (a) the reconstructed Cherenkov polar angle for single photons and (b) the difference between measured and expected arrival time.

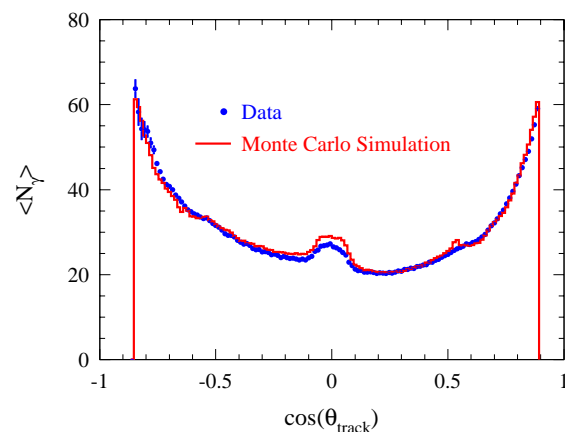


Figure 51. Number of detected photoelectrons *vs.* track polar angle for reconstructed di-muon events in data and simulation.

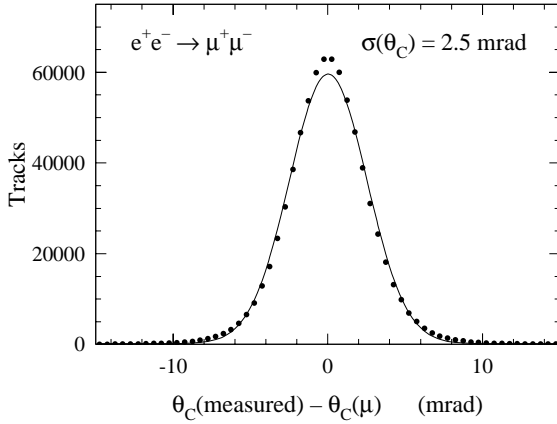


Figure 52. Resolution of the reconstructed Cherenkov polar angle per track for di-muons.

4078 Using tracks at $\cos \theta_c = 0$ as a reference, the number of photons initially decreases as the track angle moves in the forward (or backward) direction because fewer Cherenkov photons are trapped by total internal reflection in the bar. At larger values of $|\cos \theta|$, the number of photons increases for two reasons: 1) the path length of the track, and therefore the number of Cherenkov photons, increases in the fused silica, and 2) the fraction of photons trapped in the silica by total internal reflection increases.

4089 This spectrum also demonstrates a very useful feature of the DIRC in the *BABAR* environment, namely, the performance improves (see equation 1) in the forward direction, as is needed to cope with the angle-momentum correlation of particles from the boost.

4095 With the present alignment, the average track Cherenkov angle resolution for di-muon events is shown in Figure 52. The width of the fitted Gaussian is 2.5 mrad. This is about 15% worse than the 2.2 mrad expected from simulation. From the measured single track resolution *vs.* momentum in di-muon events and the difference between the expected Cherenkov angles of charged pions and kaons, the pion-kaon separation power of the DIRC can be inferred. As shown in Figure 53, the separation between kaons and pions at 3 GeV/c is about 4.2σ , approximately 15% worse than the design goal.

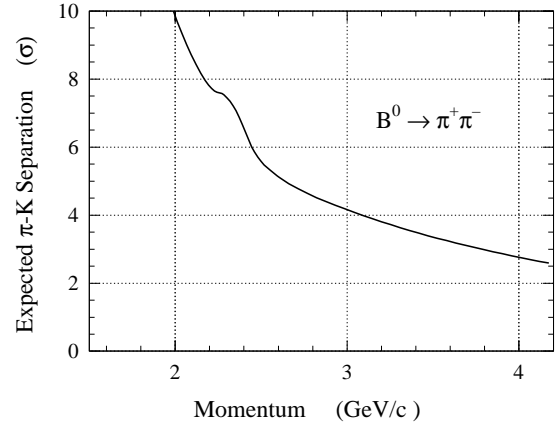


Figure 53. π -K separation in $B^0 \rightarrow \pi^+\pi^-$ events *vs.* track momentum inferred from the measured Cherenkov angle resolution and number of Cherenkov photons per track in di-muon events.

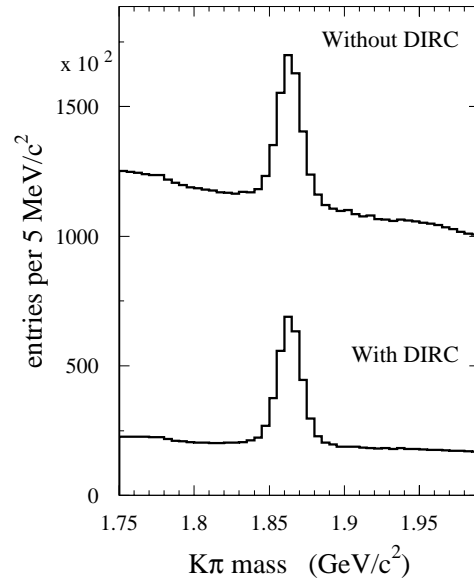


Figure 54. Invariant $K\pi$ inclusive mass spectrum without and with the use of the DIRC for kaon identification. The mass peak corresponds to the decay of the D^0 particle.

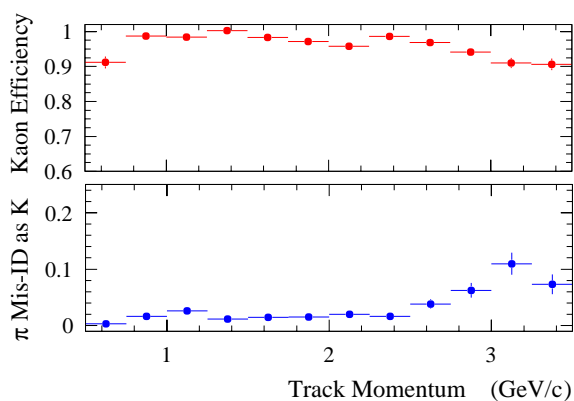


Figure 55. Efficiency and mis-identification probability for the selection of charged kaons as a function of track momentum determined using D^0 decays selected kinematically from inclusive D^* production.

Figure 54 shows an example of the use of the DIRC for sample selection. The $K\pi$ invariant two body mass spectra are shown without and with the use of the DIRC for kaon identification. The mass peak corresponds to the decay of the D^0 particle.

The efficiency for correctly identifying a charged kaon that hit a radiator bar and the probability to wrongly identify a pion as kaon are determined using D^0 decays selected kinematically from inclusive D^* production and are shown as a function of the track momentum in Figure 55 for a particular choice of particle selection criteria. The mean kaon selection efficiency and pion mis-identification are $96.2 \pm 0.2\%$ (stat.) and $2.1 \pm 0.1\%$ (stat.), respectively.

10.6. Conclusions

The DIRC is a novel ring imaging Cherenkov detector that is well-matched to the hadronic particle identification requirements of *BABAR*. The DIRC has been robust and stable and, two years after installation, about 99.7% of all PMTs and electronic channels are still operating with nominal performance. Additional shielding in the standoff box tunnel region should reduce the sensitivity to beam related backgrounds, as should faster front-end electronics, both installed during the winter 2000-2001 shutdown. At luminosities around $1 \times 10^{34}/cm^2sec$, the TDC chip will have

to be replaced with a faster version and deeper buffering. The design process for this is underway.

The initial detector performance obtained is already rather close to that predicted by the Monte Carlo simulations. Alignment and further code developments are underway which are expected to further improve performance.

REFERENCES

1. The *BABAR* Collaboration, The *BABAR* Physics Book, SLAC-R-504 (1998).
2. B. N. Ratcliff, SLAC-PUB-5946 (1992); B. N. Ratcliff, SLAC-PUB-6067 (1993); P. Coyle et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Methods* **A343** (1994) 292.
3. Spectrosil is a trademark of TSL Group PCL, Wallsend, Tyne on Wear, NE28 6DG, England; Sold in the USA by Quartz Products Co., 160 W. Lee Street, Louisville, Kentucky 40201.
4. I. Adam et al., *IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci.*, Vol. 45, No. 3 (June 1998) 657; I. Adam et al., *ibid* 450; J. Cohen-Tanugi, M. C. Convery, B. N. Ratcliff, X. Sarazin, J. Schwiening, J. Va'vra, SLAC-JOURNAL-ICFA-21, *ICFA Instrumentation Bulletin*, Fall 2000 Issue.
5. M. Benkebil et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Methods* **A442**, 364 (2000).
6. Boeing Optical Fabrication, Albuquerque, NM, USA.
7. E. Antokhin et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Methods* **A432**, 24 (1999).
8. Electron Tubes Limited (formerly: Thorn EMI Electron Tubes), Ruislip, Middlesex HA47TA, England.
9. P. Bourgeois, M. Karolak and G. Vasseur, *Nucl. Instr. and Methods* **A442**, 105 (2000).
10. Epoxy Technology, Inc., MA, USA.
11. J. Va'vra, *Nucl. Instr. and Methods* **A453**, 262 (2000).
12. P. Bailly et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Methods* **A433**, 450 (1999).
13. P. Bailly et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Methods* **A433**, 432 (1999).
14. The micro-controller is a MC68HC05x32, Motorola Inc., Schaumburg, IL, USA.

4183 15. R. Aleksan et al., *Nucl. Instr. and Meth-*
4184 *ods* **A397** (1997) 261.

4185 11. Electromagnetic Calorimeter

4186

4187 11.1. Requirements and Design

4188 11.1.1. Requirements

4189 The electromagnetic calorimeter (EMC) is de-
4190 signed to measure electromagnetic showers with
4191 excellent efficiency, and energy and angular res-
4192 olution over the energy range from 20 MeV to
4193 9 GeV. This capability allows the detection of
4194 photons from π^0 and η decays as well as from elec-
4195 tromagnetic and radiative processes. By identify-
4196 ing electrons, the EMC contributes to the flavor
4197 tagging of neutral B mesons via semi-leptonic de-
4198 cays, to the reconstruction of vector mesons like
4199 J/ψ , and the study of semi-leptonic and rare de-
4200 cays B and D mesons and τ leptons. The upper
4201 bound of the energy range is set by the need to
4202 measure QED processes, like $e^+e^- \rightarrow e^+e^-(\gamma)$
4203 and $e^+e^- \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$, for calibration and luminosity
4204 determination. The lower bound is set by the
4205 need for highly efficient reconstruction of B mes-
4206 on decays containing multiple π^0 and η .

4207 The measurement of extremely rare decays of
4208 B mesons containing π^0 s (e.g. $B^0 \rightarrow \pi^0\pi^0$) poses
4209 the most stringent requirements on energy reso-
4210 lution, namely of order 1% to 2%. Below energies
4211 of 2 GeV, the π^0 mass resolution is dominated by
4212 the energy resolution. At higher energies, the an-
4213 gular resolution becomes dominant, and therefore
4214 it is required to be of the order of a few mrad.

4215 Furthermore, the EMC has to be compatible
4216 with the 1.5 T field of the solenoid and operate re-
4217 liably over the anticipated ten-year lifetime of the
4218 experiment. To achieve excellent resolution, stable
4219 operating conditions have to be maintained.
4220 Temperatures and the radiation exposure must
4221 be closely monitored, and precise calibrations of
4222 the electronics and energy response over the full
4223 dynamic range must be performed frequently.

4224 11.1.2. Design Considerations

4225 The requirements stated above lead to the
4226 choice of a hermetic, total-absorption calorimeter,
4227 composed of a finely segmented array of thallium-
4228 iodide-doped cesium iodide (CsI(Tl)) crystals.
4229 The crystals are read out with silicon photo-
4230 diodes that are matched to the spectrum of scin-

tillation light. Recent experience at CLEO [1] has demonstrated the suitability of this choice for physics at the $\Upsilon(4S)$ resonance.

The energy resolution of a homogeneous crystal calorimeter can be described empirically in terms of a sum of two terms added in quadrature

$$\frac{\sigma_E}{E} = \frac{a}{\sqrt[4]{E(\text{GeV})}} \oplus b, \quad (6)$$

where E and σ_E refer to the energy of a photon and its rms error, measured in GeV. The energy dependent term a arises primarily from the fluctuations in photon statistics, but it is also impacted by electronic noise of the photon detector and electronics. Furthermore, beam-generated background will lead to large numbers of additional photons that add to the noise. This term is dominant at low energies. The constant term, b , is dominant at higher energies (> 1 GeV) and it arises from non-uniformity in light collection, from leakage or absorption in the material between and in front of the crystals, and from uncertainties in the calibrations. Most of these effects can be influenced by design choices, and they are stable with time. Others will be impacted by changes in the operating conditions, like variations in temperature, electronics gain, and noise, as well as by radiation damage caused by beam-generated radiation.

The angular resolution is determined by the transverse crystal size and the distance from the interaction point. It can also be empirically parameterized as a sum of an energy dependent and a constant term,

$$\sigma_\theta = \sigma_\phi = \frac{c}{\sqrt{E(\text{GeV})}} \oplus d, \quad (7)$$

where the energy E is measured in GeV. The design of the EMC required a careful optimization of a wide range of choices, from the crystal material and dimensions to the choice of the photon detector and readout electronics to the design of a calibration and monitoring system. These choices were made on the basis of extensive studies, prototyping and beam tests [2], and Monte Carlo simulation, taking into account limitations of space and the impact of other *BABAR* detector systems.

Under ideal conditions, values for the energy resolution parameters a and b close to 1% to 2% could be obtained. A position resolution of a mm will translate into an angular resolution of a few mrad, i.e., values of parameters $c \approx 3$ mrad and $d \approx 1$ mrad.

However in practice, for a large system with a small, but unavoidable amount of inert material and gaps, limitations of electronics, and background in multi-particle events, plus contributions from beam-generated background, such performance is very difficult to achieve.

Though in CsI(Tl) the intrinsic efficiency for the detection of photons is close to 100% down to a few MeV, the minimum measurable energy in colliding beam data is expected to be about 20 MeV, a limit that is largely determined by beam- and event-related background and the amount of material in front of the calorimeter. Because of the sensitivity of the π^0 efficiency to the minimum detectable photon energy it is extremely important to keep the amount of material in front of the EMC to the lowest possible level.

11.1.3. CsI(Tl) Crystals

Thallium-doped CsI meets the needs of *BABAR* in several ways. Its properties are listed in Table 11. The high light yield and small Molière radius allow for excellent energy and angular resolution, while the short radiation length allows for shower containment at *BABAR* energies with a relatively compact design. Furthermore, the high light yield and the emission spectrum permit efficient use of a silicon photo-diodes which operate well in high magnetic fields. The transverse size of the crystals is chosen to be comparable to the Molière radius achieving the required angular resolution at low energies while appropriately limiting the total number of crystals (and readout channels).

11.2. Layout and Assembly

11.2.1. Overall Layout

The EMC consists of a cylindrical barrel and a conical forward endcap. It has full coverage in azimuth and extends in polar angle from $\cos\theta = 0.96$ to $\cos\theta = -0.77$ for a solid-angle coverage of 90% in the c.m. system (Figure 56

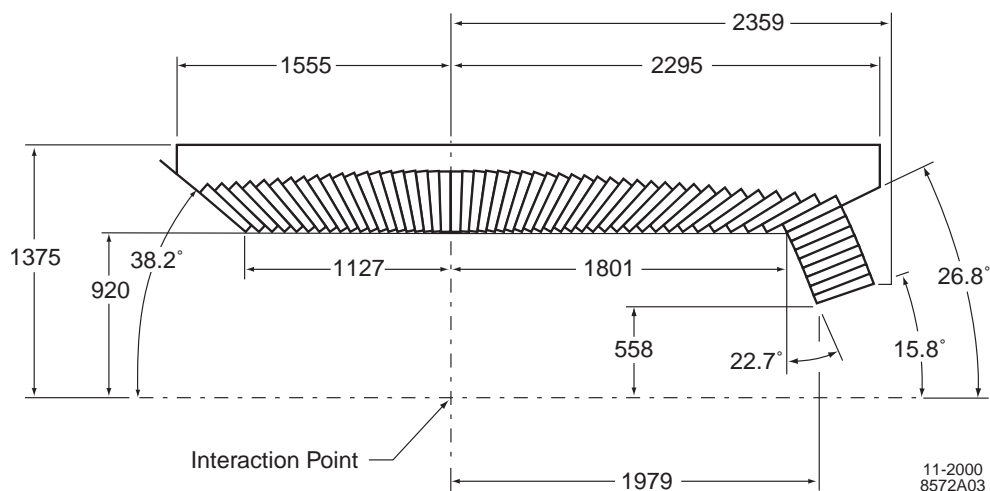


Figure 56. A longitudinal cross-section of the EMC (only the top half is shown) indicating the arrangement of the 56 crystal rings. The detector is axially symmetric around the z axis. All dimensions are given in mm.

Table 11
Properties of CsI(Tl) .

Parameter	Values
Radiation Length	1.85 cm
Molière Radius	3.8 cm
Density	4.53 g/cm ³
Light Yield	50,000 γ / MeV
Light Yield Temp. Coeff.	0.28%/°C
Peak Emission λ_{max}	565 nm
Refractive Index (λ_{max})	1.80
Signal Decay Time	680 ns (64%) 3.34 μ s (36%)

Table 12
Layout of the EMC, composed of 56 axially symmetric rings, each consisting of CsI crystals of identical dimensions.

$\cos \theta$ Interval	Length (X_0)	# Rings	Crystals /Ring
Barrel			
-0.774 – 0.349	16.0	27	120
0.350 – 0.620	16.5	7	120
0.621 – 0.793	17.0	7	120
0.794 – 0.890	17.5	7	120
Endcap			
0.892 – 0.822	17.5	3	120
0.923 – 0.947	17.5	3	100
0.948 – 0.955	17.5	1	80
0.956 – 0.962	16.5	1	80

4321 and Table 12). The barrel contains 5,760 crystals
4322 arranged in 48 distinct rings with 120 identical
4323 crystals each. The endcap holds 820 crystals ar-
4324 ranged in 8 rings, adding up to a total of 6,580
4325 crystals. The crystals have a tapered trapezoidal
4326 cross-section. The length of the crystals increases
4327 from 29.6 cm in the backward to 32.4 cm in the
4328 forward direction to limit the effects of shower
4329 leakage from the increasing average particle en-
4330 ergy.

4331 To minimize the probability of pre-showering,
4332 the crystals are supported at the outer radius,
4333 with only a thin gas seal at the front. The barrel
4334 and outer five rings of the endcap have less than
4335 0.3–0.6 X_0 of material in front of the crystal faces.
4336 The SVT support structure and electronics, as

4337 well as the B1 dipole shadow the inner three rings
 4338 of the endcap, resulting in up to $3.0 X_0$ for the
 4339 innermost ring. The principal purpose of the two
 4340 innermost rings is to enhance shower containment for
 4341 particles incident at small polar angles.

4342 11.2.2. Crystal Fabrication and Assembly

4343 The crystals were grown in boules from a melt
 4344 of CsI salt doped with 0.1% Thallium [3]. They
 4345 were cut from the boules, machined into tapered
 4346 trapezoids (Figure 57) to a tolerance of $\pm 150 \mu\text{m}$
 4347 and then polished [4]. The transverse dimensions
 4348 of the crystals for each of the 56 rings vary to
 4349 achieve the required hermetic coverage. The typi-
 4350 cal area of the front face is $4.7 \times 4.7 \text{ cm}$, while the
 4351 back face area is typically $6.1 \times 6.0 \text{ cm}$. The crys-
 4352 tals act not only as a total-absorption scintillating
 4353 medium, but also as a light guide to collect light
 4354 at the photo-diodes that are mounted on the rear
 4355 surface. At the polished crystal surface light is
 4356 internally reflected, and a small fraction is trans-
 4357 mitted. The transmitted light is recovered in part
 4358 by wrapping the crystal with two layers of diffuse
 4359 white reflector [5] [6], each $165 \mu\text{m}$ thick. The
 4360 uniformity of light yield along the wrapped crys-
 4361 tal was measured by recording the signal from a
 4362 highly collimated radioactive source at 20 points
 4363 along the length of the crystal. The light yield
 4364 was required to be uniform to within $\pm 2\%$ in the
 4365 front half of the crystal; the limit increased lin-
 4366 earlyly up to a maximum of $\pm 5\%$ at the rear face.
 4367 Adjustments were made on individual crystals to
 4368 meet these criteria by selectively roughing or pol-
 4369 ishing the crystal surface to reduce or increase its
 4370 reflectivity.

4371 Following these checks, the crystals were fur-
 4372 ther wrapped in $25 \mu\text{m}$ thick aluminum foil which
 4373 was electrically connected to the metal housing
 4374 of the photo-diodes/preamplifier assembly to pro-
 4375 vide a Faraday shield. The crystals were covered
 4376 on the outside with a $13 \mu\text{m}$ thick layer of mylar
 4377 to assure electrical isolation from the external
 4378 support.

4379 11.2.3. Photo-Diodes and Preamplifier As- 4380 sembly

4381 The photon detector consists of two $2 \times 1 \text{ cm}^2$
 4382 silicon PIN diodes glued to a transparent 1.2 mm-

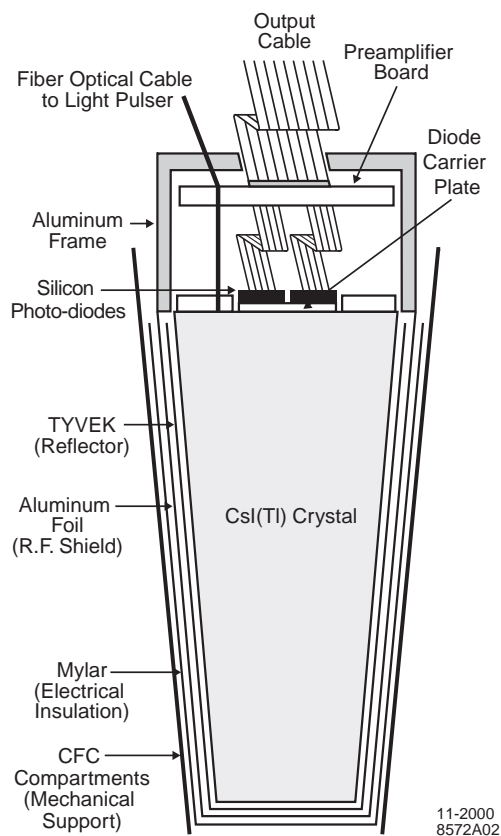


Figure 57. A schematic of the wrapped CsI(Tl) crystal and the front-end readout package mounted on the rear face. Also indicated is the tapered, trapezoidal CFC compartment, which is open at the front. This drawing is not to scale.

4383 thick substrate of polystyrene that in turn is glued
 4384 to the center of the rear face of the crystal by
 4385 an optical epoxy [7] to maximize light transmis-
 4386 sion [8]. The surrounding area of the crystal face
 4387 is covered by a plastic plate coated with white
 4388 reflective paint [9]. The plate has two 3-mm-
 4389 diameter penetrations for the fibers of the light
 4390 pulser monitoring system.

4391 As part of the quality control process, the
 4392 1.836 MeV photon line from a ^{88}Y radioactive
 4393 source was used to measure the light yield of ev-
 4394 ery crystal-diode assembly, employing a Canberra

4395 2003T preamplifier with $2\ \mu\text{s}$ Gaussian shaping.
 4396 The resulting signal distribution has a mean and
 4397 rms of 7300 photo-electrons/ MeV and 890 photo-
 4398 electrons/ MeV, respectively, with no crystal be-
 4399 low 4600 photo-electrons/ MeV [8].¹⁹

4400 Each of the diodes is directly connected to a
 4401 low-noise preamplifier. The entire assembly is en-
 4402 closed by an aluminium fixture as shown in Fig-
 4403 ure 57. This fixture is electrically coupled to the
 4404 aluminium foil wrapped around the crystal and
 4405 thermally coupled to the support frame to dissi-
 4406 pate the heat load from the preamplifiers.

4407 Extensive aging tests were performed to ascer-
 4408 tain that the diodes and the preamplifiers met the
 4409 ten-year life time requirements. In addition, daily
 4410 thermal cycles of $\pm 5^\circ\text{C}$ were run for many months
 4411 to assure that the diode-crystal epoxy joint could
 4412 sustain modest temperature variations.

4413 11.2.4. Crystal Support Structure

4414 The crystals are inserted into modules that are
 4415 supported individually from an external support
 4416 structure. This structure is built in three sec-
 4417 tions, a cylinder for the barrel and two semi-
 4418 circular structures for the forward endcap. The
 4419 barrel support cylinder carries the load of the bar-
 4420 rel modules plus the forward endcap to the mag-
 4421 net iron through four flexible supports. These
 4422 supports decouple and dampen any acceleration
 4423 induced by movements of the magnet iron during
 4424 a potential earthquake.

4425 The modules are built from tapered, trape-
 4426 zoidal compartments made from carbon-fiber-
 4427 epoxy composite (CFC) with $300\ \mu\text{m}$ thick walls
 4428 (Figure 58). Each compartment loosely holds
 4429 a single wrapped and instrumented crystal and
 4430 thus assures that the forces on the crystal sur-
 4431 faces never exceed its own weight. Each module
 4432 is surrounded by an additional layer of $300\ \mu\text{m}$
 4433 CFC to provide additional strength. The mod-
 4434 ules are bonded to an aluminum strong-back that
 4435 is mounted on the external support. This scheme
 4436 minimizes inter-crystal materials while exerting

¹⁹The calibration procedure employed in this measure-
 ment introduces a dependency of the light yield on the
 shaping time of the preamplifier. When connected to the
 actual front-end electronics in the *BABAR* detector, the sig-
 nal is reduced by a factor 1.29.

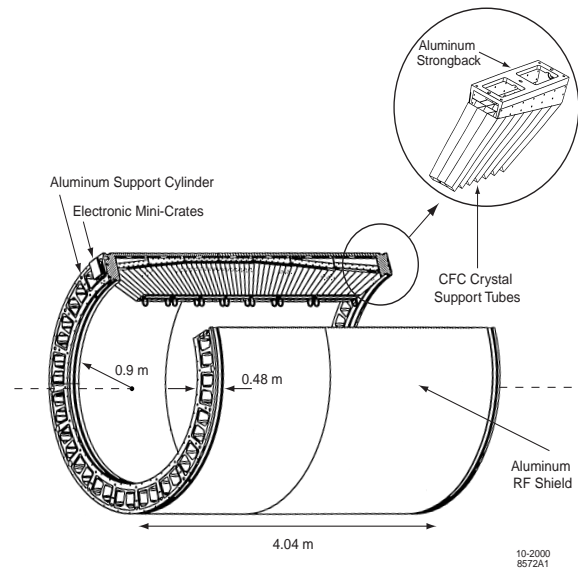


Figure 58. The support structure and assembly of the EMC barrel.

4437 minimal force on the crystal surfaces; this pre-
 4438 vents deformations and surface degradation that
 4439 could compromise performance. By supporting
 4440 the modules at the back, the material in front of
 4441 the crystals is kept to a minimum.

4442 The barrel section is divided into 280 sepa-
 4443 rate modules, each holding 21 crystals (7×3 in
 4444 $\theta \times \phi$). After the insertion of the crystals, the
 4445 aluminum readout frames, which also stiffen the
 4446 module, are attached with thermally-conducting
 4447 epoxy to each of the CFC compartments. The
 4448 entire 100 kg-module is then bolted and again
 4449 thermally epoxied to an aluminum strong-back.
 4450 The strong-back contains alignment features as
 4451 well as channels to couple into the cooling system.
 4452 Each module was installed into the 2.5 cm-thick,
 4453 4 m-long aluminum support cylinder, and sub-
 4454 sequently aligned. On each of the thick annular
 4455 end-flanges this cylinder contains access ports for
 4456 digitizing electronics crates with associated cool-
 4457 ing channels, as well as mounting features and
 4458 alignment dowels for the forward endcap.

4459 The endcap is constructed from 20 identical

4460 CFC modules (each with 41 crystals), individu- 4506
 4461 ally aligned and bolted to one of two semi-circular 4507
 4462 support structures. This vertical split into two 4508
 4463 halves was necessary to facilitate access to the 4509
 4464 central detector components. 4510

4465 The entire calorimeter is surrounded by a dou- 4511
 4466 ble Faraday shield composed of two 1 mm-thick 4512
 4467 aluminum sheets so that the diodes and pream- 4513
 4468 plifiers are further shielded from external noise. 4514
 4469 This cage also serves as the environmental bar- 4515
 4470 rier, allowing the slightly hygroscopic crystals to 4516
 4471 reside in a dry, temperature controlled nitrogen
 4472 atmosphere.

4473 11.2.5. Cooling System

4474 The EMC is maintained at constant, accu- 4520
 4475 rately monitored temperature. Of particular con- 4521
 4476 cern are the stability of the photo-diode leakage 4522
 4477 current which rises exponentially with tempera- 4523
 4478 ture, and the large number of diode-crystal epoxy 4524
 4479 joints that could experience stress due to differ- 4525
 4480 ential thermal expansion. In addition, the light 4526
 4481 yield of CsI(Tl) is weakly temperature dependent. 4527

4482 The primary heat sources internal to 4528
 4483 the calorimeter are the preamplifiers ($2 \times$ 4529
 4484 50 mW/crystal) and the digitizing electronics 4530
 4485 (3 kW per end-flange). In the barrel, the pream- 4531
 4486 plifier heat is removed by conduction to the 4532
 4487 module strong backs which are directly cooled 4533
 4488 by Fluorinert (polychlorotrifluoro-ethylene) [10]. 4534
 4489 The digitizing electronics are housed in 80 mini- 4535
 4490 crates, each in contact with the end-flanges of 4536
 4491 the cylindrical support structure. These crates 4537
 4492 are indirectly cooled by chilled water pumped 4538
 4493 through channels milled into the end flanges 4539
 4494 close to the inner and outer radii. A separate 4540
 4495 Fluorinert system in the endcap cools both the 4541
 4496 20 mini-crates of digitizing electronics and the 4542
 4497 preamplifiers. 4543

4498 11.3. Electronics

4499 The EMC electronics system, shown schemat- 4546
 4500 ically in Figure 59, is required to have negligible 4547
 4501 impact on the energy resolution of electromag- 4548
 4502 netic showers from 20 MeV to 9 GeV, while ac- 4549
 4503 commodating the use of a 6.13 MeV radioactive 4550
 4504 source for calibration. These requirements set a 4551
 4505 limit of less than 250 keV equivalent noise energy 4552

(ENE) per crystal and define an 18-bit effective 4506
 dynamic range of the digitization scheme. For 4507
 source calibrations, the least significant bit is set 4508
 to 50 keV, while for colliding beam data it is set 4509
 to 200 keV. To reach the required energy reso- 4510
 lution at high energies, the coherent component 4511
 has to be significantly smaller than the incoher- 4512
 ent noise component. In addition, it is impor- 4513
 tant that the impact of high rates of low energy 4514
 (<5 MeV) beam-induced photon background be 4515
 minimized. 4516

4517 11.3.1. Photo-Diode Readout and Pream- 4518 plifiers

4519 The ENE is minimized by maximizing the light 4520
 yield and collection, employing a highly efficient 4521
 photon detector, and a low-noise electronic read- 4522
 out. The PIN silicon photo-diodes [11] have a 4523
 quantum efficiency of 85% for the CsI(Tl) scintil- 4524
 lation light [12]. At a depletion voltage of 70 V, 4525
 their typical dark current wre measured to be 4526
 4 nA for an average capacitance of 85 pF; the 4527
 diodes are operated at a vottage of 50 V. The 4528
 input capacitance to the preamplifier is mini- 4529
 mized by connecting the diodes to the preampli- 4530
 fier with a very short cable. The preamplifier is a 4531
 low-noise charge-sensitive amplifier implemented 4532
 as a custom application specific integrated cir- 4533
 cuit (ASIC) [13]. It shapes the signal and acts 4534
 as a band-pass filter to remove high- and low- 4535
 frequency noise components. The optimum shap- 4536
 ing time for the CsI(Tl)-photodiode readout is 4537
 $2 - 3 \mu\text{s}$, but a shorter time was chosen to reduce 4538
 the probability of overlap with low-energy pho- 4539
 tons from beam background. The commensurate 4540
 degradation in noise performance is recovered by 4541
 implementing a real-time digital signal-processing 4542
 algorithm following digitization. 4543

4544 To achieve the required operational reliabil- 4545
 ity [14] for the inaccessible front-end readout com- 4546
 ponents, two photo-diodes were installed, each 4547
 connected to an preamplifier. In addition, all 4548
 components were carefully selected and subjected 4549
 to rigorous tests, including a 72-hour *burn-in* of 4550
 the preamplifiers at 70 °C to avoid *infant mortal-* 4551
ity. The dual signals are combined in the postam- 4552
 plification/digitization circuits, installed in mini-
 crates at the end-flanges, a location that is acces-

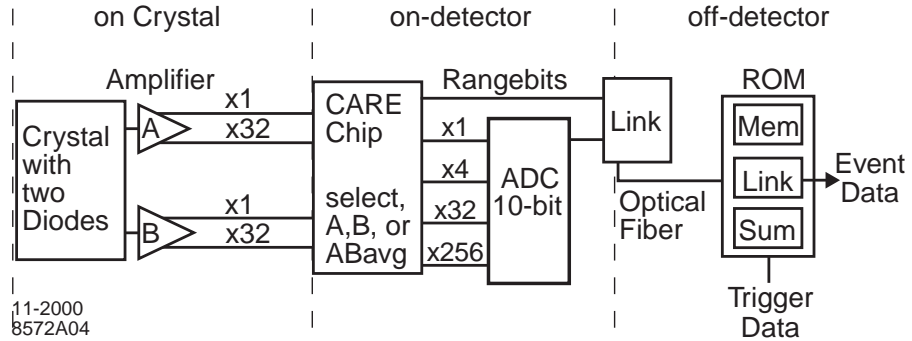


Figure 59. Schematic diagram of the EMC readout electronics.

4553 sible for maintenance.

4554 11.3.2. Postamplification, Digitization and 4555 Readout

4556 The two preamplifiers on each crystal, A and
4557 B, each provide amplification factors of 1 and 32
4558 and thus reduce the dynamic range of the signal that is transmitted to the mini-crates to 13-
4559 bits. A custom auto-range encoding (CARE) cir-
4560 cuit [13] further amplifies the signal to arrive at
4561 a total gain of 256, 32, 4 or 1 for four energy
4562 ranges, 0-50 MeV, 50-400 MeV, 0.4-3.2 GeV, and
4563 3.2-13.0 GeV, respectively. The appropriate range
4564 is identified by a comparator and the signal is dig-
4565 itized by a 10-bit, 3.7 MHz ADC. Data from 24
4566 crystals are multiplexed onto a fiber-optic driver
4567 and sent serially at a rate of 1.5 Gbits/s across a
4568 30 m-long optical fiber to the ROM. In the ROM,
4569 the continuous data stream is entered into a digi-
4570 tal pipeline. A correction for pedestal and gain
4571 is applied to each sample. The pipeline is then
4572 tapped to extract the input to the calorimeter
4573 trigger.
4574

4575 Upon receipt of the L1 Accept signal, data
4576 samples within a time window of $\pm 1 \mu\text{s}$ are se-
4577 lected for the feature extraction. Up to now, the
4578 calorimeter feature extraction algorithm performs
4579 a parabolic fit to the peak of the signal waveform
4580 to derive its energy and time. In the future, it is
4581 planned to employ a digital filter prior to the sig-
4582 nal fit to further reduce noise. For this filter algo-

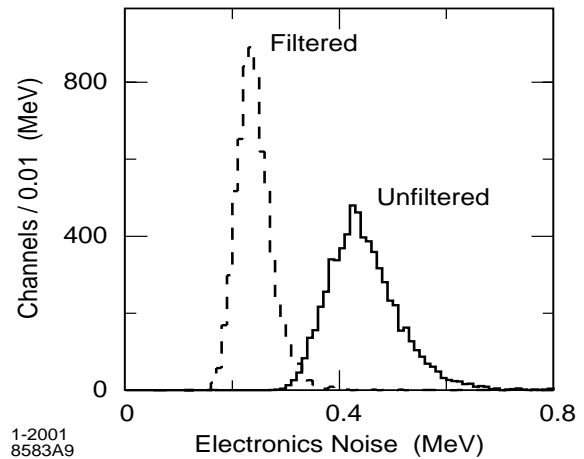


Figure 60. The distribution of equivalent noise energy for all channels of the EMC with/without digital filtering. The data were recorded in the absence of beams by a random trigger.

4583 rithm, the frequency decomposition of an average
4584 signal pulse and the typical noise spectrum are
4585 measured for all channels and subsequently used
4586 to derive an optimum set of weights that maxi-
4587 mizes the signal-to-noise ratio. These weights are
4588 then applied to individual samples to obtain a
4589 filtered waveform.

The magnitude of the electronic noise is measured as the rms width of the pedestal distribution as shown in Figure 60. The observed distribution for all channels translates to an ENE of 230 keV and 440 keV with and without digital filtering; this result is comparable to design expectations. Measurements of the auto-correlation function indicate that the coherent noise component is negligible compared to the incoherent noise, except for regions where the preamplifiers saturate (see below).

During data taking, the data acquisition imposes a single-crystal readout threshold in order to keep the data volume at an acceptable level. This energy threshold is currently set to 1 MeV and during stable colliding beam conditions on average 1,000 crystals are read out (measured with 600 mA of e^- and 1100 mA of e^+ and a random clock trigger), corresponding to an average occupancy of 16%. The electronic noise accounts for about 10%, while the remaining signals originate from beam-generated background (see Chapter 3). In addition, a typical hadronic event contributes signals in xxx crystals.

11.3.3. Electronics Calibration and Linearity

To measure pedestal offsets, determine the overall gain, and to remove non-linearities the front-end electronics are calibrated by precision charge injection into the preamplifier input. Initially, residual non-linearities of up to 12% in limited regions near each of the range changes were observed and corrected for offline [15]. These non-linearities were traced to oscillations on the ADC cards that have since been corrected. The correction resulted in markedly improved energy resolution at high energies. Residual non-linearities (typically 2 – 4%) arise primarily from cross-talk, impacting both the electronics calibrations and the colliding-beam data. The effect is largest at about 630 MeV (950 MeV) in a high (low) gain preamplifier channel. The implementation of an energy dependent correction is expected to significantly reduce this small, remaining effect, and lead to a further improvement of the energy resolution.

11.3.4. Electronics Reliability

With the exception of minor cable damage during installation (leaving two channels inoperative), the system of 13,160 readout channels has met its reliability requirements. After the replacement of a batch of failing optical-fiber drivers, the reliability of the digitizing electronics improved substantially, averaging channel losses of less than 0.1%.

11.4. Energy Calibration

The energy calibration of the EMC proceeds in two steps: First, the measured pulse height in each crystal has to be translated to the actual energy deposited. Second, the energy deposited in a shower spreading over several adjacent crystals has to be related to the energy of the incident photon or electron by correcting for energy loss mostly due to leakage at the front and the rear, and absorption in the material between and in front of the crystals, as well as shower energy not associated with the cluster.

The offline pattern recognition algorithm that groups adjacent crystals into “clusters” is described in detail in section 11.6.

11.4.1. Individual Crystal Calibration

In spite of the careful selection and tuning of the individual crystals, their light yield varies significantly and is generally non-uniform. It also changes with time under the impact of beam-generated radiation. The absorbed dose results is largest at the front of the crystal and results in increased attenuation of the transmitted scintillation light. The light yield must therefore be calibrated at different energies, corresponding to different average shower penetration, to track the effects of the radiation damage.

The calibration of the deposited energies is performed at two energies at opposite ends of the dynamic range, and these two measurements are combined by a logarithmic interpolation. A 6.13 MeV radioactive photon source [17] provides an absolute calibration at low energy, while at higher energies (3 - 9 GeV) the relation between polar angle and energy of e^\pm from Bhabha events is exploited [18].

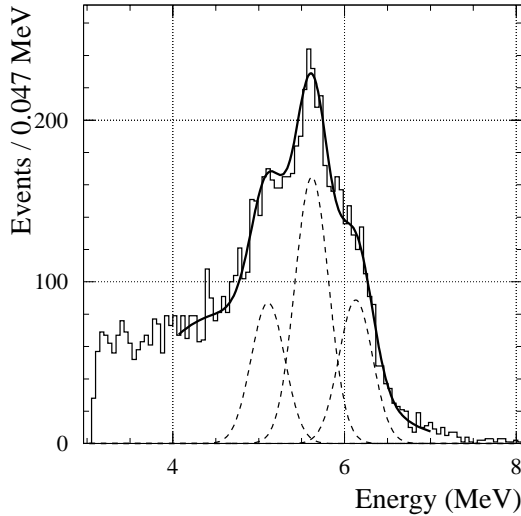


Figure 61. A typical pulse-height spectrum recorded with the radioactive source to calibrate the single-crystal energy scale of the EMC. The spectrum shows the primary 6.13 MeV peak and two associated escape peaks at 0.511 MeV and 1.022 MeV below.

A flux of low-energy neutrons ($4 \times 10^8/s$) is used to irradiate Fluorinert [10] to produce photons of 6.13 MeV via the reaction $^{19}F + n \rightarrow ^{16}N + \alpha$, $^{16}N \rightarrow ^{16}O^* + \beta$, $^{16}O^* \rightarrow ^{16}O + \gamma$. The activated ^{16}N has a half-life of 7 seconds and thus does not cause radiation damage or long-term activation. The fluid is pumped at a rate of 125 ℓ/s from the neutron generator to a manifold of thin-walled (0.5 mm) aluminum pipes that are mounted immediately in front of the crystals. At this location, the typical rate of photons is 40 Hz/crystal.

Figure 61 shows a typical source spectrum that was derived from the raw data by employing a digital filter algorithm. For a 30-minute exposure, a statistical error of 0.35% is obtained, compared to a systematic uncertainty of less than 0.1%. This calibration is performed weekly.

At high energies, single crystal calibration

is performed with a pure sample of Bhabha events [18]. As a function of the polar angle of the e^\pm , the deposited cluster energy is constrained to equal the prediction of a GEANT [19] based Monte Carlo simulation. For a large number of energy clusters, a set of simultaneous linear equations relates the measured to the expected energy and thus permits the determination of a gain constant for each crystal. In a 12-hour run at a luminosity of $3 \times 10^{33} \text{cm}^{-2} \text{sec}^{-2}$ some 200 hits per crystal can be accumulated, leading to a statistical error of 0.35%. This calibration has been performed about once per month, and will be fully automated in the future.

11.4.2. Cluster Energy Correction

The correction for energy loss due to shower leakage and absorption is performed as a function of cluster energy and polar angle. At low energy ($E < 0.8 \text{ GeV}$), it is derived from π^0 decays [20]. The true energy of the photon is expressed as a product of the measured deposited energy and a correction function which depends on $\ln E$ and $\cos \theta$. The algorithm constrains the two-photon mass to the nominal π^0 mass and iteratively finds the coefficients of the correction function. The typical corrections are of order $6 \pm 1\%$. The uncertainty in the correction is due to systematic uncertainties in the background estimation and the fitting technique.

At higher energy ($0.8 \text{ GeV} < E < 9 \text{ GeV}$) the correction is estimated from single-photon Monte Carlo simulations. A second technique using radiative Bhabha events [21] is being developed. The beam energy and the precise track momenta of the e^+ and e^- , together with the direction of the radiative photon, are used to fit the photon energy. This fitted value is compared to the measured photon energy to extract correction coefficients, again as a function of $\ln E$ and $\cos \theta$.

11.5. Monitoring

11.5.1. Environmental Monitoring

The temperature is monitored by 256 thermal sensors that are distributed over the calorimeter, and has been maintained at $20 \pm 0.5^\circ \text{C}$. Dry nitrogen is circulated throughout the detector to stabilize the relative humidity at $1 \pm 0.5\%$.

11.5.2. Light-Pulsar System

4746 The light response of the individual crystals
 4747 is measured daily using a light-pulsar system
 4748 [16] [22]. Spectrally filtered light from a
 4749 xenon flash lamp is transmitted through optical
 4750 fibers to the rear of each crystal. The light
 4751 pulse is similar in spectrum, rise-time and shape
 4752 to the scintillation light in the CsI(Tl) crystals.
 4753 The pulses are varied in intensity by neutral-
 4754 density filters, allowing a precise measurement
 4755 of the linearity of light collection, conversion to
 4756 charge, amplification and digitization. The intensity
 4757 is monitored pulse-to-pulse by comparison to
 4758 a reference system with two radioactive sources,
 4759 ^{241}Am and ^{148}Gd , that are attached to a small
 4760 CsI(Tl) crystal that is read out by both a photo-
 4761 diode and a photo-multiplier tube. The system
 4762 is stable to 0.15% over a period of one week and
 4763 has proven to be very valuable in diagnosing problems.
 4764 For example, the ability to accurately vary the
 4765 light intensity has led to the detection of
 4766 non-linearities in the electronics [16].
 4767

11.5.3. Radiation Monitoring and Damage

4768 The radiation exposure is monitored by 60/56
 4769 RadFETs placed in front of the barrel/endcap
 4770 crystals. RadFETs [23] are real-time integrating
 4771 dosimeters based on solid-state Metal Oxide
 4772 Semiconductor (MOS) technology. In Figure 62
 4773 the accumulated dose is compared to the observed
 4774 loss in scintillation light, separately for the end-
 4775 cap, the forward, and the backward barrel. The
 4776 dose appears to follow the integrated luminosity,
 4777 approximately linearly. The light loss is greatest
 4778 in the forward region corresponding to the area of
 4779 highest integrated radiation dose. The size of the
 4780 observed light loss is close to expectations, based
 4781 on extensive irradiation tests.
 4782

11.6. Reconstruction Algorithms

4783 A typical electromagnetic shower spreads over
 4784 many adjacent crystals, forming a *cluster* of energy
 4785 deposits. Pattern recognition algorithms
 4786 have been developed to efficiently identify these
 4787 clusters and to differentiate single clusters with
 4788 one energy maximum from merged clusters with
 4789 more than one local energy maximum, referred
 4790 to as a *bumps*. Furthermore, the algorithms have
 4791

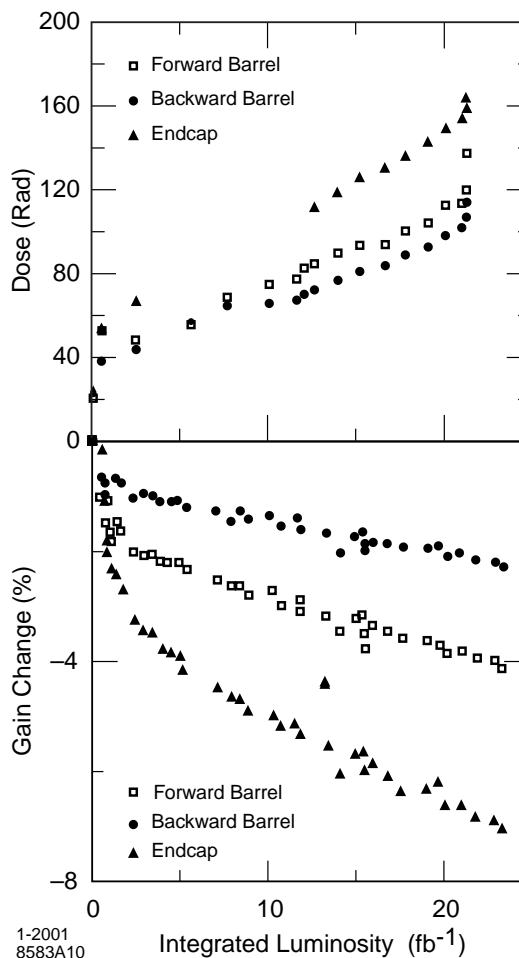


Figure 62. Impact of beam-generated radiation on the CsI(Tl) crystals: a) the integrated dose measured with RadFETs placed in front of the crystals, b) the degradation in light yield measured with the radioactive-source calibration system.

to determine whether a bump is generated by a charged or a neutral particle.

Clusters are required to contain at least one seed crystal with an energy above 10 MeV. Surrounding crystals are considered as part of the cluster if their energy exceeds a threshold of 1 MeV, or if they are contiguous neighbors (including corners) of a crystal with at least 3 MeV. The value of the single crystal threshold is set by the data acquisition system in order to keep the data volume at an acceptable level, given the current level of electronics noise and beam-generated background. It is highly desirable to reduce this threshold since fluctuations in the effective energy loss at the edges of a shower cause a degradation in resolution, particularly at low energies.

Local energy maxima are identified within a cluster by requiring that the candidate crystal have an energy, $E_{LocalMax}$, which exceeds the energy of each of its neighbors, and satisfy the following condition: $0.5(N - 2.5) > E_{NMax}/E_{LocalMax}$, where E_{NMax} is the highest energy of the neighboring N crystals with an energy above 2 MeV.

Clusters are divided into as many bumps as there are local maxima. An iterative algorithm is used to determine the energy of the bumps. Each crystal is given a weight, w_i , and the bump energy is defined as $E_{bump} = \sum_i w_i E_i$, where the sum runs over all crystals in the cluster. For a cluster with a single bump, the result is $w_i \equiv 1$. For a cluster with multiple bumps, the crystal weight for each bump is calculated as

$$w_i = E_i \frac{\exp(-2.5r_i/r_M)}{\sum_j E_j \exp(-2.5r_j/r_M)},$$

where the index j runs over all crystals in the cluster. r_M refers to the Molière radius, and r_i is the distance of the i th crystal from the centroid of the bump. At the outset, all weights are set to one. The process is then iterated, whereby the centroid position used in calculating r_i is determined from the weights of the previous iteration, until the bump centroid position is stable to within a tolerance of 1 mm.

The position of a bump is calculated using a center-of-gravity method with logarithmic, rather than linear weights [24] [25], $W_i = 4.0 +$

$\ln E_i/E_{bump}$, where only crystals with positive weights (i.e., $E_i > 0.0184 \times E_{bump}$, are used in the calculation. This procedure emphasizes lower-energy crystals, while utilizing only those crystals that make up the core of the cluster. A systematic bias of the calculated polar angle originates from the non-projectivity of the crystals. This bias is corrected by a simple offset of -2.6 mrad for $\cos\theta < 0$ and $+2.6$ mrad for $\cos\theta > 0$.

A bump is associated with a charged particle by projecting a track to the inner face of the calorimeter. The distance between the track impact point and the bump centroid is calculated and if it is consistent with the angle and momentum of the track, the bump is associated with this charged particle. Otherwise, it is assumed to originate from a neutral particle.

On average, xxx clusters are detected per hadronic event, of which yyy are identified as neutral particles. At current operating conditions, beam-induced background contributes on average on 1.4 neutral clusters with energies above 20 MeV. This number is significantly smaller than the average number of crystals with energies above 10 MeV (see Chapter 3).

11.7. Performance

11.7.1. Energy Resolution

At low energy, the energy resolution of the EMC is measured directly with the radioactive source yielding $\sigma_E/E = (5.0 \pm 0.8)\%$ at 6.13 MeV (see Figure 61). At high energy, the resolution is derived from Bhabha scattering, where the energy of the detected shower can be predicted from the polar angle of the e^\pm . The measured resolution is $\sigma_E/E = (1.9 \pm 0.07)\%$ at 7.5 GeV (Figure 63). Figure 64 shows the energy resolution extracted from a variety of processes as a function of energy. Below 2 GeV, the mass resolution of π^0 and η mesons decaying into two photons of approximately equal energy is used to infer the EMC energy resolution. The decay $\chi_{c1} \rightarrow J/\psi\gamma$ provides a measurement at an average energy of ≈ 500 MeV, and measurements at high energy are derived from Bhabha scattering. A fit to the

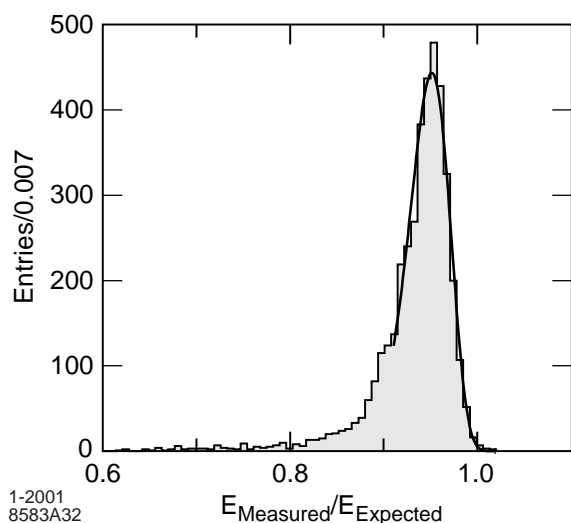
1-2001
8583A32

Figure 63. The ratio of the measured energy to the expected energy for electrons from Bhabha scattering. The solid line indicates a fit to a Gaussian distribution.

4882 energy dependence results in

$$4883 \frac{\sigma_E}{E} = \frac{(2.32 \pm 0.30)\%}{\sqrt[4]{E(\text{GeV})}} \oplus (1.85 \pm 0.12)\%, \quad (8)$$

4884 These values of these fitted parameters are higher
4885 than the somewhat optimistic earlier estimates,
4886 but they agree with detailed Monte Carlo sim-
4887 ulations which include the contributions from elec-
4888 tronic noise and beam background, as well as the
4889 impact of the material and the energy thresholds.

4890 11.7.2. Angular Resolution

4891 The measurement of the angular resolution is
4892 based on the analysis of π^0 and η decays to two
4893 photons of approximately equal energy. The re-
4894 sult is presented in Figure 65. The resolution
4895 varies between about 12 mrad at low energies and
4896 3 mrad at high energies. A fit to the empirical pa-
4897 rameterization of the energy dependence results
4898 in

$$4899 \sigma_\theta = \sigma_\phi = \left(\frac{3.87 \pm 0.07}{\sqrt{E(\text{GeV})}} \oplus 0.00 \pm 0.04 \right) \text{ mrad}. \quad (9)$$

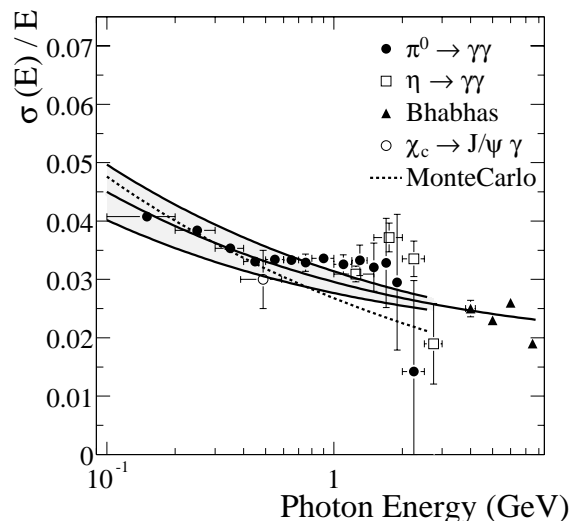


Figure 64. The energy resolution for the electro-
magnetic calorimeter measured for photons and
electrons from various processes. The solid curve
is a fit to Equation 6 and the shaded area denotes
the r.m.s. error on the fit.

4900 These fitted values are slightly lower than one
4901 would expect from detailed Monte Carlo sim-
4902 ulations.

4903 11.7.3. π^0 Mass and Width

4904 Figure 66 shows the two-photon invariant mass
4905 in $B\bar{B}$ events. The reconstructed π^0 mass is
4906 measured to be $135.1 \text{ MeV}/c^2$ and is stable to better
4907 than 1% over the full photon energy range. The
4908 width of $6.9 \text{ MeV}/c^2$ agrees well with the predic-
4909 tion obtained from detailed Monte-Carlo simu-
4910 lations. In low-occupancy $\tau^+\tau^-$ events the width
4911 is slightly smaller, $6.5 \text{ MeV}/c^2$, for π^0 energies be-
4912 low 1 GeV. A similar improvement is also ob-
4913 served in analyses using selected isolated photons
4914 in hadronic events.

4915 11.7.4. Electron Identification

4916 Electrons are separated from charged hadrons
4917 primarily on the basis of the shower energy, lat-
4918 eral shower moments, and track momentum [26].

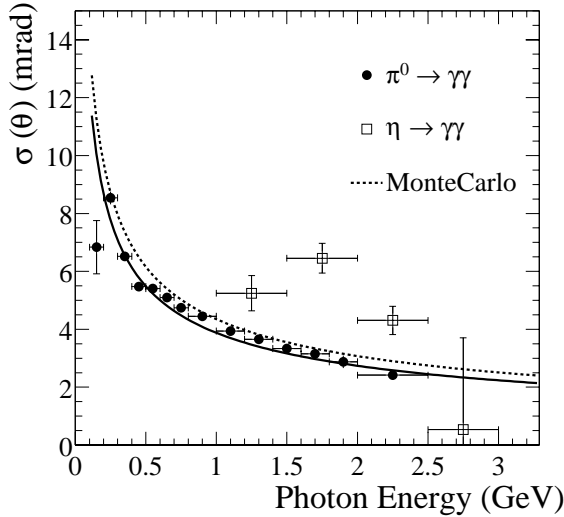


Figure 65. The angular resolution of the EMC for photons from π^0 and η decays. The solid curve is a fit to Equation 7.

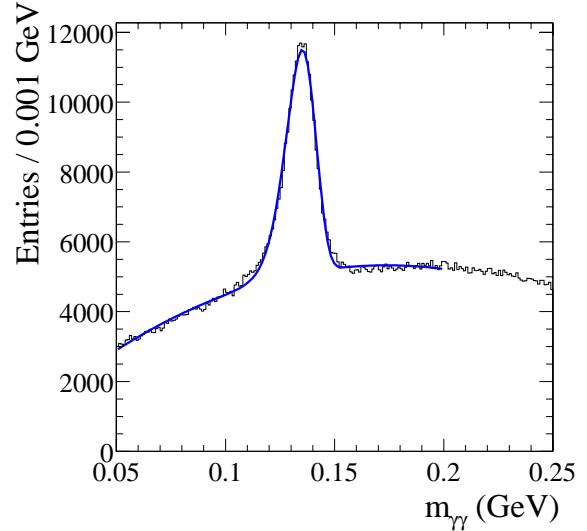


Figure 66. Invariant mass of two photons in $B\bar{B}$ events. The energies of the photons and the π^0 are required to exceed 30 MeV and 300 MeV, respectively. The solid line is a fit to the data [20].

4919 In addition, the dE/dx energy loss in the DCH
 4920 and the DIRC Cherenkov angle are required to
 4921 be consistent with an electron. The most impor-
 4922 tant variable for the discrimination of hadrons
 4923 is the ratio of the shower energy to the track
 4924 momentum (E/p). Figure 67 shows the effi-
 4925 ciency for electron identification and the pion
 4926 misidentification probability as a function of momen-
 4927 tum for two sets of selection criteria. The elec-
 4928 tron efficiency is measured using radiative Bhab-
 4929 has and $e^+e^- \rightarrow e^+e^-e^+e^-$ events. The pion
 4930 misidentification probability is measured for sel-
 4931 ected charged pions from K_s^0 decays and three-
 4932 prong τ decays. A tight (very tight) selector
 4933 results in an efficiency plateau at 94.8% (88.1%)
 4934 in the momentum range $0.5 \text{ GeV}/c < p < 2 \text{ GeV}/c$.
 4935 The pion misidentification probability is of order
 4936 0.3% for the very tight criteria. The selection cri-
 4937 teria can, of course, be tailored to meet the needs
 4938 of specific physics analyses.

4939 11.8. Summary

4940 The EMC is presently performing close to de-
 4941 sign expectations. Improvements in the energy
 4942 resolution are expected from the optimization of
 4943 the feature-extraction algorithms designed to fur-
 4944 ther reduce the electronics noise. Modifications
 4945 to the electronics should allow for more precise
 4946 calibrations. The expected noise reduction should
 4947 permit a lower single-crystal readout threshold.
 4948 However, this decrease in noise might be off-set
 4949 by an increase in the beam background that is ex-
 4950 pected for higher luminosities and beam currents.

4951 REFERENCES

- 4952 1. T. Swarnicki, *Performance of the CLEO-II*
 4953 *CsI(Tl) Calorimeter in Proceedings of*
 4954 *Workshop on B Factories*, Stanford, CA,
 4955 USA (1992).
- 4956 2. R.J. Barlow *et al.*, *Results from the BABAR*
 4957 *Electromagnetic Calorimeter Beam Test*,

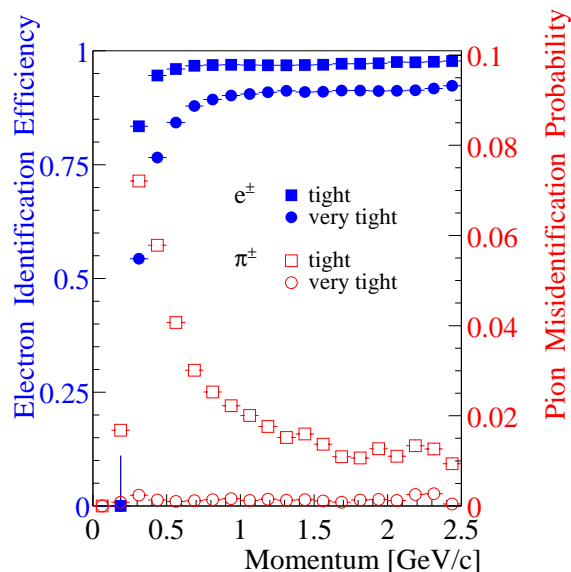


Figure 67. The electron efficiency and pion misidentification probability as a function of the particle momentum.

- 4958 Nucl. Instr. and Methods A420 (1999) 162.
 4959 3. Chemetall and Aldrich-APL.
 4960 4. Shanghai Institute of Ceramics, Shanghai,
 4961 P.R.China;
 4962 Beijing Glass Research Institute, Beijing,
 4963 P.R.China;
 4964 Hilger Analytical, United Kingdom;
 4965 Crismatec, France;
 4966 Amcrys-H, Ukraine.
 4967 5. TYVEK, registered trademark of E.I. DuPont
 4968 de Nemours & Co.
 4969 6. G. Dahlinger, *Aufbau und Test eines*
 4970 *Kalorimeter-Prototyps aus CsI(Tl) zur*
 4971 *Energie- und Ortsmessung hochenergetischer*
 4972 *Photonen*, PhD Thesis, Technische
 4973 Universität Dresden, Germany (1998).
 4974 7. A17-01 manufactured by EPILOX, Germany.
 4975 8. J. Brose, G. Dahlinger, K.R. Schubert, Nucl.
 4976 Instr. and Methods A417 (1998) 311; C. Jessop
 4977 *et al.*, *Development of Front End Readout*

- 4978 *for the BABAR Electromagnetic Calorimeter*,
 4979 BABAR Note-216 (199x).
 4980 9. NE-561 manufactured by Nuclear Enterprises,
 4981 USA.
 4982 10. Fluorinert (polychlorotrifluoro-ethylene) is
 4983 manufactured by 3M Corporation.
 4984 11. S-2744-08 PIN diode by Hamamatsu Photonics,
 4985 K. K., Hamamatsu City, Japan.
 4986 12. C. Jessop *et al.* *Performance Tests of*
 4987 *Hamamatsu 2774-08 Photo-Diodes for the*
 4988 *BABAR Electromagnetic Calorimeter Front*
 4989 *End Readout*, BABAR Note-236 (199x).
 4990 13. G. Haller, D. Freytag, IEEE Trans.Nucl.Sci.
 4991 43, 1610 (1996)
 4992 14. C. Jessop, *Reliability Issues for the Front-*
 4993 *End Readout of the BaBar Electromagnetic*
 4994 *Calorimeter*, BABAR Note-217 (199x).
 4995 15. S. Menke, *Offline Correction of Non-*
 4996 *Linearities in the BaBar Electromagnetic*
 4997 *Calorimeter*, BABAR Note-527 (199x).
 4998 16. M. Kocian, *Das Lichtpulsersystem des*
 4999 *elektromagnetischen CsI(Tl)-Kalorimeters*
 5000 *des BABAR-Detektors*, PhD Thesis, TUD-
 5001 IKTP/00-03, Technische Universität Dresden,
 5002 Germany (2000).
 5003 17. F. Gaede, D. Hitlin, M. Weaver, *The Radioactive*
 5004 *Source Calibration of the BABAR Electro-*
 5005 *magnetic Calorimeter*, BABAR Note-531 199x.
 5006 J. Button-Shafer *et al.*, *Use of Radioactive*
 5007 *Sources for Calibrating and Monitoring the*
 5008 *BABAR Electromagnetic Calorimeter*, BABAR
 5009 Note-322 (199x).
 5010 18. R. Müller-Pfefferkorn, *Die Kalibration des*
 5011 *elektromagnetischen CsI(Tl)-Kalorimeters*
 5012 *des Babar-Detektors mit Ereignissen der*
 5013 *Bhabha-Streuung*, PhD Thesis, TUD-
 5014 IKTP/01-01, Technische Universität Dresden,
 5015 Germany 2001.
 5016 19. GEANT Detector Description and Simulation
 5017 tool, CERN Program Library, Long Writeup
 5018 W5013, (1994).
 5019 20. S. Menke *et al.* *Calibration of the BABAR Elec-*
 5020 *tromagnetic Calorimeter with π^0 s*, BABAR
 5021 Note-528 (199x).
 5022 21. J. Bauer, *Radiative Bhabha Calibration*
 5023 *for the BABAR Electromagnetic Calorimeter*,
 5024 BABAR Note-521 (2000).
 5025 22. P.J. Clark, *The BaBar Light Pulser System*,

- 5026 PhD Thesis, University of Edinburgh, UK
 5027 (2000);
 5028 B. Lewandowski, *Entwicklung und Aufbau*
 5029 *eines Lichtpulsersystems fr das Kalorimeter*
 5030 *des BABAR-Detektors*, PhD Thesis, Ruhr-
 5031 *Universität Bochum, Germany (2000).*
 5032 23. RADFET
 5033 24. B. Brabson *et al.* Nucl. Instr. and Meth-
 5034 *ods A332 (1993) 419.*
 5035 25. S. Otto, *Untersuchungen zur Ortsrekonstruk-*
 5036 *tion elektromagnetischer Schauer*, Diplomar-
 5037 *beit, Technische Universität Dresden, Ger-*
 5038 *many 2000.*
 5039 26. U. Langenegger, *Electron Identification with*
 5040 *BABAR, BABAR Note-530 (2000).*

5041 12. Detector for Muons and Neutral 5042 Hadrons

5043 12.1. Physics Requirements and Goals

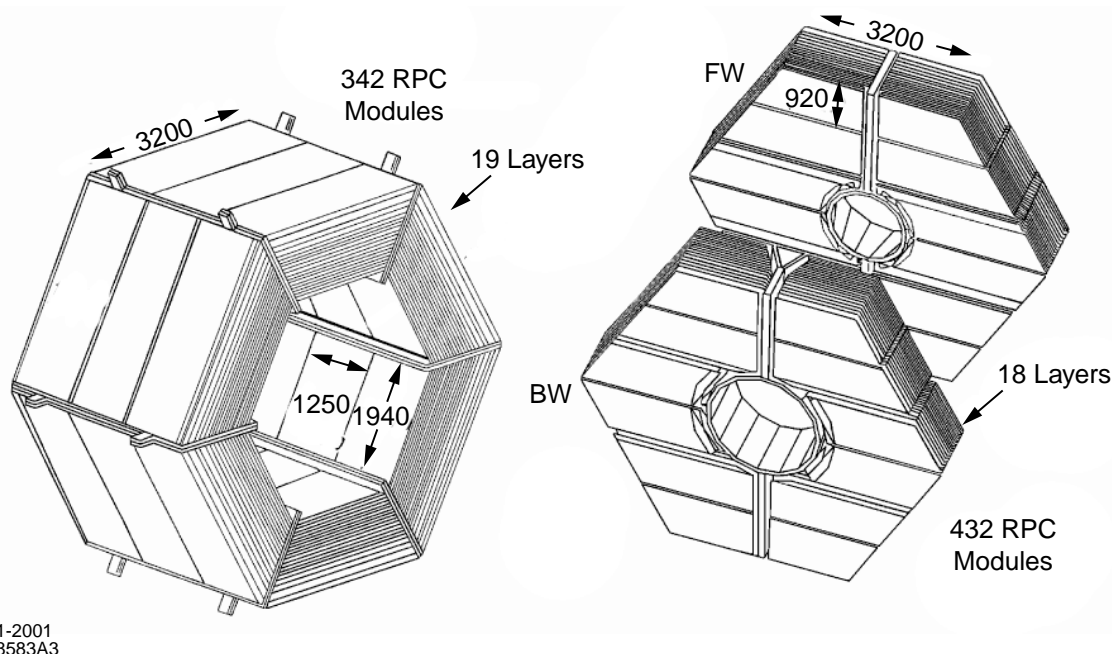
5044 The Instrumented Flux Return (IFR) was de-
 5045 signed to identify muons with high efficiency and
 5046 good purity, and to detect neutral hadrons (pri-
 5047 marily K_L^0 and neutrons) over a wide range of
 5048 momenta and angles. Muons are important for
 5049 tagging the flavor of neutral B mesons via semi-
 5050 leptonic decays, for the reconstruction of vector
 5051 mesons, like the J/ψ , and the study of semi-
 5052 leptonic and rare decays involving leptons of B
 5053 and D mesons and τ leptons. K_L^0 detection allows
 5054 for the study of exclusive B decays, in particular
 5055 CP eigenstates. The IFR could also help in veto-
 5056 ing charm decays and improve the reconstruction
 5057 of neutrinos.

5058 The principal requirements for IFR are large
 5059 solid angle coverage, good efficiency, and high
 5060 background rejection for muons down to mo-
 5061 menta below 1 GeV/ c . For neutral hadrons, high
 5062 efficiency and good angular resolution are most
 5063 important. Because this system is very large and
 5064 difficult to access, high reliability and extensive
 5065 monitoring of the detector performance and the
 5066 associated electronics plus the voltage distribu-
 5067 tion are necessary.

5068 12.2. Overview and RPC Concept

5069 The IFR uses the steel flux return of the mag-
 5070 net as muon filter and hadron absorber. Single
 5071 gap resistive plate chambers (RPCs) [1] with two-
 5072 coordinate readout have been chosen as detectors.

5073 The RPCs are installed in the gaps in the finely
 5074 segmented steel (see Chapter 4) of the six barrel
 5075 sectors and the two end-doors of the flux return,
 5076 as illustrated in Figure 68. The steel segmenta-
 5077 tion has been optimized on the basis of Monte
 5078 Carlo studies of muon penetration and charged
 5079 and neutral hadron interactions. The steel is
 5080 segmented into 18 plates, increasing in thickness
 5081 from 2 cm of the inner nine plates to 10 cm of
 5082 outermost plate(s). The nominal gap width is
 5083 3.5 cm in the inner layers of the barrel and 3.2 cm
 5084 elsewhere. There are 19 RPC layers in the barrel
 5085 and 18 in the endcaps. In addition, two layers of
 5086 cylindrical RPCs are installed between the EMC



1-2001
8583A3

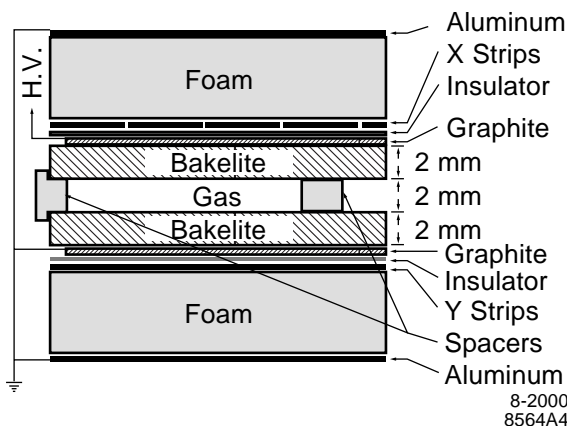
Figure 68. Overview of the IFR: Barrel sectors and forward (FW) and backward (BW) end-doors; the shape of the RPC modules and their dimensions are indicated.

5087 and the magnet cryostat to detect particles exiting
5088 the EMC.

5089 RPCs detect streamers from ionizing particles
5090 via capacitive readout strips. They offer several
5091 advantages: simple, low cost construction and the
5092 possibility of covering odd shapes with minimum
5093 dead space. Further benefits are large signals and
5094 fast response allowing for simple and robust front
5095 end electronics and good time resolution, typi-
5096 cally 1-2 ns. The position resolution depends on
5097 the segmentation of the readout, a few mm are
5098 achievable.

5099 A cross section of an RPC is shown schemati-
5100 cally in Figure 69. The construction of the planar
5101 and the cylindrical RPCs differ in detail, but are
5102 based on the same concept.

5103 The planar RPCs consist of two bakelite (phe-
5104 nolic polymer) sheets, 2 mm thick and separated
5105 by a gap of 2 mm. The gap is enclosed at the edge
5106 by a 7 mm wide frame. The gap width is kept uni-
5107 form by polycarbonate spacers (0.8 cm²) that are



8-2000
8564A4

Figure 69. Cross section of a planar RPC with the schematics of the high voltage (HV) connection.

glued to the bakelite, spaced at distances of about 10 cm. The bulk resistivity of the bakelite sheets has been especially tuned to $10^{11} - 10^{12} \Omega \text{ cm}$. The external surfaces are coated with graphite to achieve a surface resistivity of $\approx 100 \text{ k}\Omega/\text{square}$. These two graphite surfaces are connected to high voltage ($\approx 8 \text{ kV}$) and ground, and protected by an insulating mylar film. The bakelite surfaces facing the gap are treated with linseed oil to improve performance. The modules are operated in limited streamer mode and the signals are read out capacitively, on both sides of the gap, by external electrodes made of aluminium strips on a mylar substrate.

The cylindrical RPCs have resistive electrodes made of a special plastic composed of a conducting polymer and ABS. The gap thickness and the spacers are identical to the planar RPCs. No linseed oil or any other surface treatments have been applied. The very thin and flexible electrodes are laminated to fiberglass boards and foam to form a rigid structure. The copper readout strips are attached to the fiberglass boards.

12.3. RPC Design and Construction

The IFR detectors cover a total active area of about 2,000 m^2 . There are a total of 806 RPC modules, 57 in each of the 6 barrel sectors, 108 in each of the four half end-doors, and 32 in the two cylindrical layers. The size and the shape of the modules are matched to the steel dimensions with very little dead space. More than 25 different shapes and sizes were built. Because the size of a module is limited by the maximum size of the material available, i.e. for the bakelite sheets ($320 \times 130 \text{ cm}^2$), two or three RPC modules are joined to form a gap-size chamber. The modules of each chamber are connected to the gas system in series, the gas enters in two corners on the same side a short side and exit from two outlets on the opposite side. The high voltage is supplied separately to each module.

In the barrel sectors, the gaps between the steel plates extend 375 cm in the z direction and vary in width from 180 cm to 320 cm. Three modules are needed to cover the whole area of the gap, as shown in Figure 68. Each barrel module has 32 strips running perpendicular to the beam axis to

measure the z coordinate and 96 strips in the orthogonal direction extending over three modules to measure ϕ .

Each of the four half end-doors is divided into three sections by steel spacers that are needed for mechanical strength. Each of these sections is covered by two RPC modules that are joined to form a larger chamber with orthogonal readout strips.

The readout strips are separated from the ground aluminium plane by 4 mm thick foam sheet and form strip lines of 33Ω impedance. The strips are connected to the readout electronics at one end and terminated with a $2 \text{ k}\Omega$ resistor at the other. Even and odd numbered strips are connected to different front-end cards, so that the failure of a card does not result in a total loss of signal, since a particle crossing the gap typically generates signals in two or more adjacent strips.

The cylindrical RPC is divided into four sections, each covering a quarter of the circumference. Each of these sections has four sets of two single gap RPCs with orthogonal readout strips, the inner with helical $u - v$ strips that run parallel to the diagonals, and the outer with ϕ and z strips. Within each section, the strips in a given readout plane from different modules are connected to form long strips extending over the whole chamber. Details of the segmentation and dimensions can be found in Table 13.

Prior to shipment to SLAC, all RPC modules (equipped with only one readout plane) were tested with cosmic rays. The single rates, dark currents and efficiency were measured as a function of HV. In addition, detailed studies of the efficiency, spatial resolution, and strip multiplicity were performed [2],[3].

After the assembly of RPC modules into gap size chambers, a new series of cosmic rays tests was performed to assure stable and efficient operation. Before the installation of the iron flux return, the planar chambers were then inserted horizontally into the gaps. The cylindrical chambers were inserted after the installation of the solenoid and the EMC.

For each module, test results and conditions are retained in a database, together with records of the critical parameters of the components, the

Table 13

IFR Readout segmentation. The total number of channels is close to 53,000. There are a few deviations from the numbers quoted here, in particular, in layer 19 (due to the external steel structure), and in layer 18 (due to the reduced length). The central chambers in the forward end-door have more vertical strips because of the central hole.

section	# of sectors	coordinate	# of layers	# strips layer/sect	strip length (cm)	strip width (mm)	total # channels
barrel	6	ϕ	19	96	350	19.7-32.8	$\approx 11,000$
		z	19	96	190-318	38.5	$\approx 11,000$
endcap	4	y	18	6x32	124-262	28.3	13,824
		x	18	3x64	10-180	38.0	$\approx 15,000$
cylinder	4	ϕ	1	128	370	16.0	512
		z	1	128	211	29.0	512
		u	1	128	10-422	29.0	512
		v	1	128	10-423	29.0	512

5203 assembly and cabling. In addition, operational
5204 data are stored, such as the results of the weekly
5205 efficiency measurements that are used in the re-
5206 construction and simulation software.

5207 12.4. Power and Utilities

5208 Once the return flux assembly was completed,
5209 the front-end cards (FECs) [4], were installed and
5210 services were connected, the low (LV) and high
5211 voltage (HV), and the gas system. There are
5212 approximately 3,300 FECs, most of them were
5213 placed right on top of the RPC modules, inside
5214 the steel gap. The remainder were installed in
5215 custom crates mounted on the outside of the steel.

5216 Each FEC is individually connected to the LV
5217 power distribution. The total power required by
5218 the entire system is about 8 kW at +7.0 V and
5219 2.5 kW at -5.2 V. The LV power is supplied by
5220 custom built switching devices with load and line
5221 regulation to better than 1%. Additional features
5222 are precision shunts to measure output currents
5223 and TTL logic to inhibit output.

5224 The HV power system is custom adaptation by
5225 CAEN [5]. Each HV mainframe can hold up to
5226 10 pods, each carrying two independent 10 kV
5227 outputs at 1 mA and 2 mA. The modules are con-
5228 nected to the HV supply which is located in the
5229 electronics building via a distribution box. Each
5230 distribution box services six RPC modules and
5231 up to six distribution boxes are daisy-chained to

5232 one pod output. Provisions are made for mon-
5233 itoring the currents drawn by each module. To
5234 reduce noise, the RPC ground plane is decoupled
5235 from the HV power supply ground by a 100 k Ω
5236 resistor.

5237 The RPCs operate with a non-flammable gas
5238 mixture containing approximately 56.7% Argon,
5239 38.8% Freon 134a (1,1,1,2 tetrafluoroethane), and
5240 4.5% isobutane. This mixture is drawn from a
5241 760-liter tank that is maintained at an absolute
5242 pressure of 1500 – 1600 Torr. The mixing tank is
5243 filled on demand with the three component gases
5244 under control of mass-flow meters, each adjusted
5245 to provide the desired amount to the mixture.
5246 Samples are extracted from the mixing tank pe-
5247 riodically and analyzed to verify the correct mix-
5248 ture.

5249 The mixed gas is distributed at a gauge pres-
5250 sure of approximately 6.5 Torr through a paral-
5251 lel manifold system of 12.7-mm-diameter copper
5252 tubing. Each chamber is connected to the man-
5253 ifold through several meters of 6 mm-diameter
5254 plastic tubing (polyamide or Teflon). The flow to
5255 each of these is adjusted individually with a small
5256 multi-turn metering valve. Protection against
5257 overpressure is provided by an oil bubbler to at-
5258 mosphere in parallel with each chamber (after the
5259 valve), limiting the gauge pressure in the chamber
5260 to a maximum of about 1 Torr. Return flow of
5261 gas from each chamber is monitored by a second

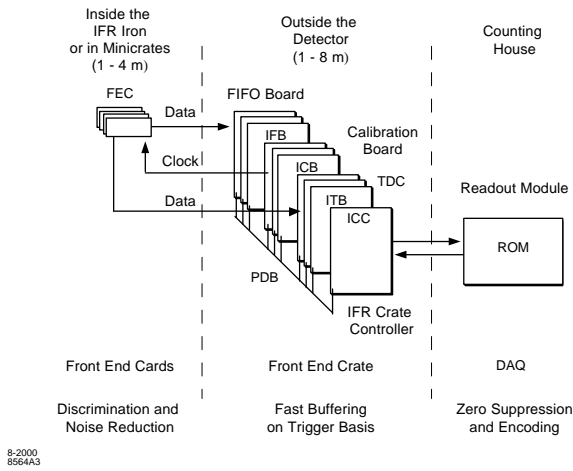


Figure 70. Block diagram of the IFR electronics.

oil bubbler which creates a back pressure of about 0.2 Torr. The total flow through the entire system is approximately 5 ℓ /minute and corresponds on average to two gas exchanges per day.

12.5. Electronics

A block diagram of the IFR electronics system [6] is shown in Figure 70. It includes the front-end cards, the data acquisition, and the trigger.

The detector-mounted FECs service 16 channels. They shape and discriminate the input signals and set a bit for each strip with a signal above a fixed threshold. The input stage operates continuously and is connected directly to the strips which act as transmission lines. A fast OR of all FEC input signals provides time information and is also used for diagnostic purposes. Two types of FECs are employed to handle the inputs of different polarity for signals from the opposite side of the gap. Because of the very low occupancy there is no provision for buffering during the trigger latency [4].

Signals from 3,300 FECs are transmitted to eight custom IFR front-end crates that are located near the detector and from there via a standard G link to four ROMs in the electronics building. Each front-end crate houses up to 16 data handling cards, four trigger cards and a crate controller card (ICC) that collects data from the

DAQ cards and forwards them to a ROM. There are three kinds of data cards: the FIFO boards (IFBs) that buffer strip hits, the TDC boards (ITBs) that provide time information, and the calibration boards (ICBs) that inject test pulses into the FECs. To deliver the data and clock signals within the jitter limit to all the boards in the front-end crate, a custom backplane (PDB) for a standard 6U Eurocard crate was designed using 9-layers “strip line” technology. Each board is connected to the ICC via 3 point-to-point lines for three single-end signals (data-in, data-out and clock), all of the same length and impedance (50Ω).

The IFB reads the digital hit patterns from the FECs in less than 2.2 ms, stores the data into FIFOs and transfers FIFO contents into one of the ROMs. Each IFB handles 64 FECs acting as an acquisition master: it receives commands via the PDB, and transmits and receives data patterns from the ROM (via GLINK and ICC). This card operates with the system clock frequency of 59.5 MHz.

The ICB is used for front-end test and calibrations. A signal with programmable amplitude and width is injected into the FEC input stage. To provide timing calibration and to determine the correct readout delay, the board is also used together with the TDCs.

The ICC interfaces the crate backplane with the G link. The physical interface is the FINISAR transceiver, a low cost and highly reliable data link for applications up to 1.5 Gbit/s.

The TDC board exploits the excellent time resolution of the RPCs. Each board has 96 ECL differential input channels, reading fast OR signals from the FECs. Time digitization is achieved by three custom TDCs, designed at CERN [7]. Upon receipt of a L1 trigger, data are selected and stored until readout by the ROM. The intrinsic resolution of the board is better than 200 ps. The 59.5 MHz clock signal is synchronized with the data and distributed to the 16 boards. High performance drivers are used to provide a reliable clock distribution with a jitter of less than 0.5 ns.

12.6. Slow Controls and On-line Monitoring

The IFR is a system with a large number of components and electronics distributed all over the *BABAR* detector. To assure safe and stable operation, an extensive monitoring and control system was installed and has been in operation from the start. The IFR On-line Detector Control (IODC) monitors the performance of the RPCs by measuring the singles counting rate and the dark current of every module. It also controls and monitors the operation of the electronics, the DAQ and trigger, as well as the LV, the HV, and the gas system. The total number of hardware channels is close to 2,500, and the hardware is installed in 8 custom slave DAQ crates [8].

The system has been easy to operate. HV trips are rare. Temperature monitoring in the steel structure and the electronics crates has proven very useful for the diagnosis of operational problems. The occupancy is extremely low everywhere but in layer 18 of the forward end-door which lacks adequate shielding from machine generated background. On average, there are about 100 strip hits per event.

12.7. Efficiency Measurements and Performance

The efficiency of the RPCs is evaluated for both normal collision data and cosmic ray muons recorded with the IFR trigger. Every week cosmic ray data are recorded at different voltage settings and the efficiency is measured chamber by chamber as a function of the applied voltage. The absolute efficiency at the nominal working voltage (typically 7.6 kV) is stored in the database for use in the event reconstruction software.

To calculate the efficiency in a given chamber, nearby hits in a given layer and hits in different layers are combined to form clusters. Two different algorithms are used: The first is based solely on the IFR information and uses data recorded with a dedicated FIR trigger; the second matches the FIR clusters with the tracks reconstructed in the drift chamber. Both these algorithms start from one-dimensional IFR clusters defined as a group of adjacent hits in one of the two readout coordinates. The cluster position is defined

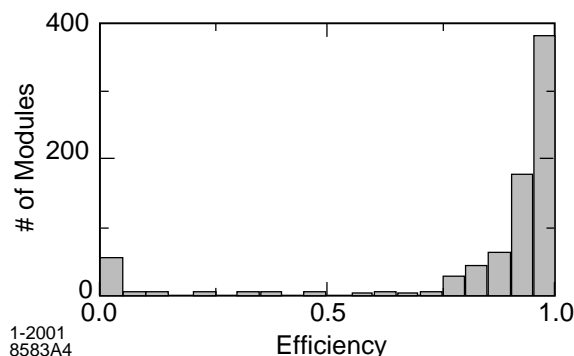


Figure 71. Distribution of the efficiency for all RPC modules measured with cosmic rays in June 1999. Some 50 modules were not operational at that time.

as the centroid of the strips in the cluster. In the first algorithm, two-dimensional clusters are formed by joining one-dimensional clusters (of the same readout coordinate) in different layers, provided the distance between their coordinate centroids is less than a given value. In each sector, two-dimensional clusters in different coordinates are combined to three-dimensional clusters as long as there are less than three layers missing one of the two coordinates. The second algorithm extrapolates charged tracks reconstructed by the drift chamber into the FIR. FIR clusters which are less than 12 cm from the extrapolated track are combined to form three-dimensional or two-dimensional clusters. A detailed discussion of the clustering algorithm can be found elsewhere [9].

The residual distributions from straight line fits to two-dimensional clusters typically have an rms width of less than 1 cm. An RPC is considered efficient if a signal is detected at a distance of less than 10 cm from the fitted straight line in either of the two readout planes. Following the installation and commissioning of the IFR system, all the PC modules were tested with cosmic rays and their efficiency was measured. The results are presented in Figure 71. Of the active RPC modules, 75% exceed an efficiency of 90%.

Early tests indicated that the RPC dark current was very temperature dependent, specifi-

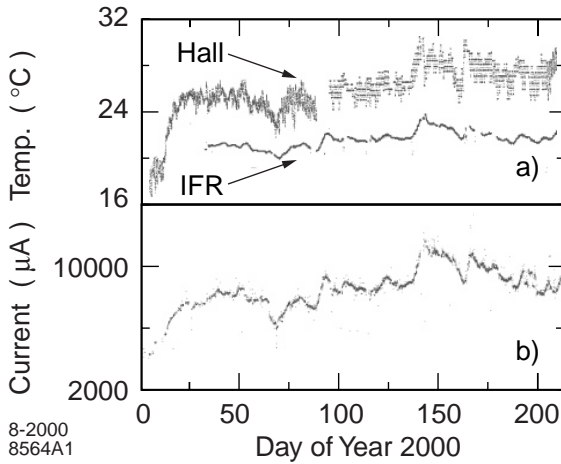


Figure 72. History of the temperature and dark current in the RPC modules since January 2000. top: temperature in the IR-2 hall and in the backward end-door; bottom: total dark current in the 216 modules of the backward end-door.

5411 cally, the current increases 14 – 20% per °C. Because the IR experimental hall does not have temperatures regulation this presents a serious problem. The FECs that are installed in the steel gaps each produce 3 W, adding up to a total power dissipation of 3.3 kW in the barrel and 1.3 kW in the forward end-door.

5418 During the first summer of operation the daily average temperature in the IR hall was 28°C and the maximum hall temperature frequently exceeded 31°C. The temperature inside the steel rose to more than 37°C and the dark currents in many modules exceeded the capabilities of the HV system and some RPCs had to be temporarily disconnected.

5426 To overcome this problem, water cooling was installed on the barrel and end-door steel, removing ≈ 10 kW of heat and stabilizing the temperature to 20 – 21°C in the barrel, 22°C in the backward and 24°C in the forward end-doors. Figure 72 shows the history of temperature in the hall and temperature and total dark current in the backward end-door. While the current closely follow the temperature variations, the range of

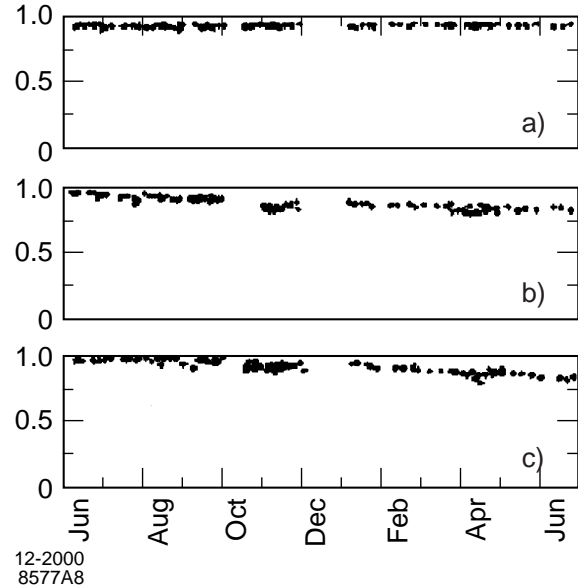


Figure 73. Efficiency history for 12 months starting in June 1999 for RPC modules showing different performance: a) highly efficient and stable; b) continuous slow decrease in efficiency; c) more recent, faster decrease in efficiency.

5435 change is now limited to a few degrees.

5436 During the operation at high temperatures a large fraction of the RPCs (> 50%) showed not only very high dark currents but also a some reduction in efficiency compared to earlier measurements [10]. After the cooling was installed and the RPCs were reconnected, some of them continued to deteriorate while others remained stable, some of them (> 30%) at full efficiency. (see Figure 73). Detailed studies revealed large regions of very low efficiency in these modules, but no clear pattern was identified.

5447 The cause of the efficiency loss remains under investigation. Several possible causes have been excluded as the primary source of the problem, such as the change in the bakelite bulk resistivity, loosened spacers, gas flow or composition. A number of prototype RPCs developed similar efficiency problems after being operated above a temperature 36°C for a period of two weeks. In

5455 some of these modules, evidence was found that
 5456 the linseed oil had failed to cure and had accu-
 5457 mulated at various spots under the impact of the
 5458 high voltage.

5459 12.8. Muon Identification

5460 While muon identification relies almost enti-
 5461 rely on the IFR, other detector systems pro-
 5462 vide complementary information. Charged parti-
 5463 cles are reconstructed in the SVT and DCH and
 5464 muon candidates are required to meet the crite-
 5465 ria for minimum ionizing particles in the EMC,
 5466 i.e. tracks depositing large amounts of energy are
 5467 rejected. Charged tracks that are reconstructed
 5468 in the tracking systems are extrapolated to the
 5469 IFR taking into account the non-uniform mag-
 5470 netic field, multiple scattering and the average
 5471 energy loss. The projected intersections with the
 5472 RPC planes are computed and for each readout
 5473 plane all clusters detected within a predefined dis-
 5474 tance from the predicted intersection are associ-
 5475 ated with the track.

5476 For each cluster in the IFR associated with a
 5477 charged track a number of variables are defined to
 5478 discriminate muons from charged hadrons: 1) the
 5479 total number of interaction lengths traversed from
 5480 the IP to the last RPC layer with an associated
 5481 cluster, 2) the difference between this measured
 5482 number of interaction lengths and the number of
 5483 interaction lengths predicted for a muon of the
 5484 same momentum and angle, 3) the average num-
 5485 ber and the rms of the distribution of RPC strips
 5486 per layer, 4) the χ^2 for the geometric match be-
 5487 tween the projected track and the centroids of
 5488 clusters in different RPC layers, and 5) the χ^2 of
 5489 a polynomial fit to the 2-dimensional IFR clus-
 5490 ters. These variables will be combined into global
 5491 likelihood analysis to optimize the efficiency and
 5492 purity of muons. At present, cuts on individual
 5493 variables are employed.

5494 The performance of muon selection has been
 5495 tested on samples of muons from $\mu\mu ee$ and $\mu\mu\gamma$
 5496 final states and pions from 3-prong τ decays and
 5497 $K_S \rightarrow \pi^+\pi^-$ decays. The selection of these con-
 5498 trol samples is based on kinematic variables, and
 5499 not on variables used for muon selection. As illu-
 5500 strated in Figure 74, a muon detection efficiency
 5501 of close to 90% has been achieved in the momen-

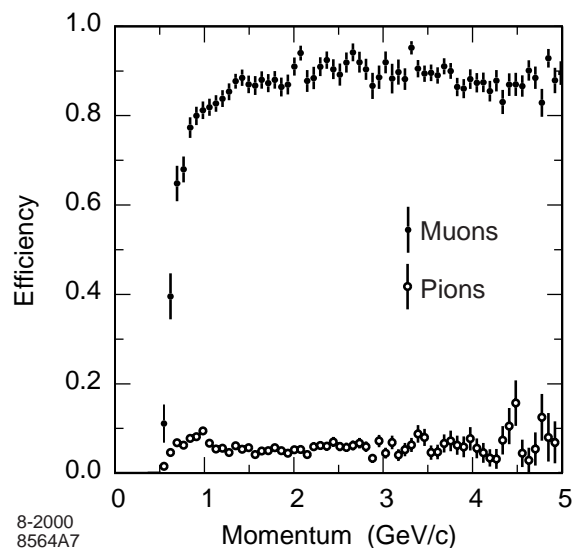


Figure 74. Muon efficiency and pion misidentification probability as a function of the track momentum, obtained with loose selection criteria.

5502 tum range of $1 < p < 3$ GeV/c with a fake rate
 5503 for pions of about 5%. The pion misidentification
 5504 can be reduced by a factor of two by tighter se-
 5505 lection cuts which lower the detection efficiency
 5506 to about 80%. Above 1 GeV/c decays in flight
 5507 contribute 1.5% to the pion misidentification.

5508 12.9. K_L^0 and Neutral Hadron Detection

5509 K_L^0 and other neutral hadrons interact in the
 5510 iron of the IFR and can be identified as clus-
 5511 ters that are not associated with a charged track.
 5512 Monte Carlo simulations predict that about 64%
 5513 of K_L^0 's above a momentum of 1 GeV/c produce
 5514 a cluster in the cylindrical RPC, and/or a cluster
 5515 with hits in two or more planar RPC layers.

5516 Unassociated clusters that have an angular sep-
 5517 aration of ≤ 0.3 rad are combined into a com-
 5518 posite cluster, joining clusters that originate from
 5519 showers that spread into adjacent sectors of the
 5520 barrel, several sections of the end-doors and/or
 5521 the cylindrical RPC. This procedure also com-
 5522 bines multiple clusters from large fluctuations in
 5523 the hadronic showers. The direction of the neu-
 5524 tral hadron is determined from the event vertex

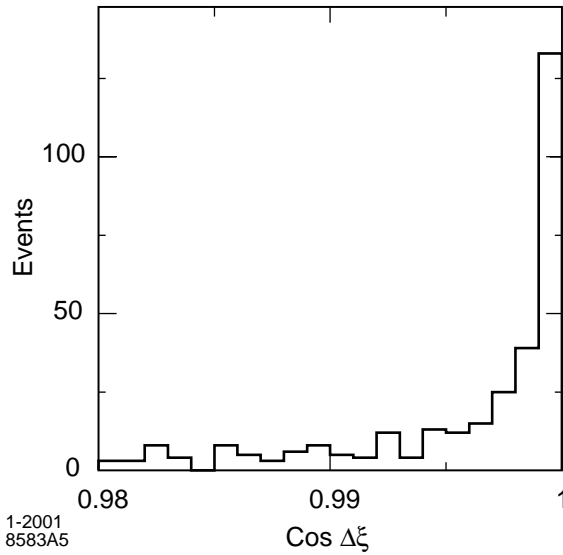
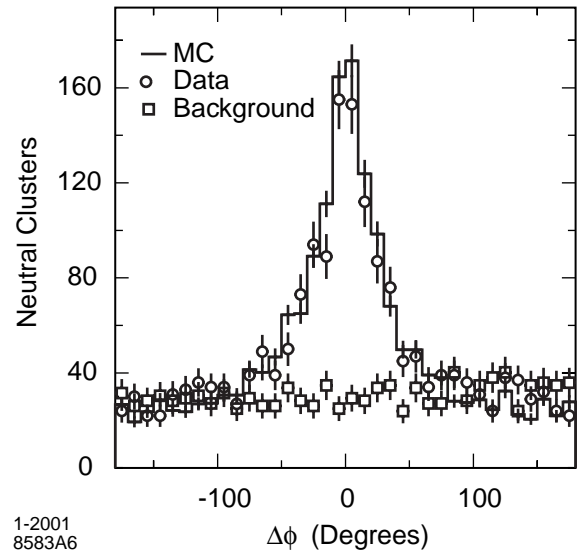
1-2001
8583A51-2001
8583A6

Figure 75. Angular difference, $\cos\Delta\xi$, between the direction of the missing momentum and the closest neutral IFR cluster for a sample of ϕ mesons produced in the reaction $e^+e^- \rightarrow \phi\gamma$ with $\phi \rightarrow K_L^0 K_S^0$.

and the centroid of the neutral cluster. No information on the energy of the cluster can be obtained.

Since a significant fraction of the hadrons interact before reaching the IFR, information from the EMC and the cylindrical RPCs is combined with the IFR cluster information. Neutral showers in the EMC are associated with the neutral hadrons detected in the IFR, based on a match in production angles. For a good match a χ^2 probability of $\geq 1\%$ is required.

An estimate of the angular resolution of the neutral hadron cluster can be derived from a sample of K_L^0 produced in the reaction $e^+e^- \rightarrow \phi\gamma \rightarrow K_L^0 K_S^0 \gamma$. The K_L^0 direction is inferred from the missing momentum computed from the measured particles in the final state, γ and K_S^0 . The data in Figure 75 indicate that the angular resolution is of the order of xxx $^\circ$.

For multi-hadron events with a reconstructed J/Ψ decay, Figure 76 shows the angular difference, $\Delta\phi$, between the missing momentum and

Figure 76. Difference between the direction of the reconstructed neutral hadron cluster and the transverse missing momentum of the event. The Monte Carlo simulation is normalized to the luminosity of the data; the background is obtained using neutral hadrons and the missing momentum from different events.

the direction of the nearest neutral hadron cluster. The observed peak demonstrates clearly that the missing momentum can be associated with a neutral hadron, assumed to be a K_L^0 .

????? estimate of efficiency and resolution for KL ???

12.10. Summary and Outlook

The IFR is the largest RPC system built so far. It provides efficient muon identification and allows for the detection of K_L^0 interacting in the steel and the calorimeter. During the first year of operation a large fraction of the RPC modules have suffered significant losses in efficiency. This effect appears to be correlated with high temperatures, but the full extent of the problem and its cause remain under study. Thanks to the large number of RPC layers, this problem has not yet impacted the overall performance too severely. But current extrapolations, even after installa-

tion of water cooling on the steel, indicate a severe problem for the future operation. Recently, 24 end-door modules have been replaced by new RPCs with improved treatment of the bakelite surfaces that should lead to full curing of the linseed oil coating. Results from this new production and other tests will need to be evaluated before decisions on future improvements of the IFR can be made.

REFERENCES

1. R. Santonico, R. Cardarelli, Nucl. Instr. and Methods **A187** (1981) 377.
2. F. Anulli *et al.* Nucl. Instr. and Methods **A409** (1998) 542.
3. A. Calcaterra, *et al.* Performance of the BABAR RPCs in a Cosmic Ray Test in *Proceedings of the International Workshop on Resistive Plate Chambers and Related Detectors*, Naples, Italy (1997).
4. N. Cavallo, *et al.* Nucl. Phys. **B**(Proc. Suppl.) **61B** (1998) 545; N. Cavallo, *et al.*, Nucl. Instr. and Methods **A 409** (1998) 297.
5. HV system SY-127, Pod Models A300-P and A300-N, by CAEN, Viareggio, Italy.
6. G. Crosetti *et al.* Data Acquisition System for the RPC Detector of BABAR Experiment in *Proceedings of the International Workshop on Resistive Plate Chambers and Related Detectors*, Naples, Italy (1997).
7. TDC custom chip INFO NEEDED!
8. P. Paolucci, The IFR Online Detector Control System, SLAC PUB-8167 (1999).
9. L. Lista, Object Oriented Reconstruction Software for the IFR Detector of BABAR Experiment in *Proceedings of the Conference on Computing in High Energy Physics*, Padova, Italy (2000).
10. A. Zallo *et al.* The BABAR RPC System in *Proceedings of the 5th International Workshop on Resistive Plate Chambers and Related Detectors*, Bari, Italy (1999).

13. Trigger

13.1. Trigger design requirements

The most basic requirements for the trigger system are to select the physics events of interest (Table 14) with a high, stable and well-understood efficiency while keeping the total event output rate to permanent storage under 120 Hz at the design luminosity of $3 \times 10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$. This total includes some prescaled samples of events, such as ones failing the trigger conditions or from random beam crossings, which are required for diagnostic and background studies.

The actual efficiency requirement depends on the physics channel being considered. The total trigger efficiency is required to be at least 99% for all $B\bar{B}$ events and at least 95% for continuum events, which are required for background subtraction. Less stringent requirements are put on the efficiencies of other physics channels of interest, e.g. the efficiencies for fiducial τ pair events are required to be 90-95%, depending on decay channels.

The trigger is required to be robust and flexible in order to achieve stable operation even under unexpected situations. It is designed to be able to operate at up to ten times the expected nominal PEP-II background rates and to degrade slowly for backgrounds above that level. It is also required to be able to operate when some of the detector channels are dead or noisy. Additionally, the trigger should not cause more than 1% downtime.

Table 14

Physics event production and trigger rates at $\Upsilon(4S)$ and a luminosity of $\mathcal{L} = 3 \times 10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$. The e^+e^- cross section refers to fiducial events with either e^+ or e^- inside EMC detection volume. [Numbers need check]

Event type	Cross-section (nb)	Production Rate (Hz)	Level 1 Trigger Rate (Hz)
$B\bar{B}$	1.05	3.2	3.2
$u\bar{u}+d\bar{d}+c\bar{c}+s\bar{s}$	3.39	10.2	10.1
e^+e^-	~ 53	159	156
$\mu^+\mu^-$	1.16	3.5	3.1
$\tau^+\tau^-$	0.94	2.8	2.4

The trigger is implemented in two levels; the Level 1 (L1) hardware and Level 3 (L3) software triggers. The underlying concept is that the Level 1 is as open as possible to physics, after which Level 3 selects the events of most interest, consistent with the desired output rate.

As an indication for the level of background the Level 1 need to reduce from, the expected rate of background interactions producing at least one track in the drift chamber with $p_t > 120$ MeV/c or at least one cluster in the calorimeter with $E > 100$ MeV is ~ 10 kHz each at a luminosity of 3×10^{33} . The Level 1 is required to have an output rate of less than 2 kHz. It needs to operate with a latency fixed within a defined range; for all events which are triggered, 99% of the trigger signals have to be delivered to the Fast Control and Timing System (FCTS) within the time window between 11 and 12 μ s after the event occurred. All parts of the Level 1 are also required to read out sufficient trigger data for each event to allow offline calculation of the efficiencies from the data themselves.

The Level 3 performs the second stage of rate reduction from the maximum Level 1 output rate to a maximum final rate of 120 Hz. It must reject events from a number of background processes which are not of physics interest. In addition, it must flag events needed for luminosity, diagnostics and calibration purposes. It is required that only 90 Hz of the output rate is used by physics events, with the remaining 30 Hz used for this other information. Finally, Level 3 software is required to comply with the *BABAR* software conventions and standards; in particular, the code has to be usable in both online and offline systems to reduce duplication of effort and also provide consistency.

13.2. Level 1 trigger system

The Level 1 trigger selects events and achieves its rate reduction based on a fraction of the detector data processed by specialized hardware. Hits in the drift chamber, energy deposition in the electromagnetic calorimeter and hit occupancy in the instrumented flux return systems are used to quickly identify particle tracks, the presence of deposited energy, and the presence of muons, re-

spectively. The drift chamber trigger (DCT) and electromagnetic calorimeter trigger (EMT) are both designed to independently satisfy all triggering requirements with high efficiency, thereby providing the needed degree of redundancy. The instrumented flux return trigger (IFT) is used for triggering μ -pair and cosmic ray events, and for diagnostic purposes.

Each of the three Level 1 trigger processors generates trigger “primitives” (summary data on the position and energy of particles) that is sent to the global trigger (GLT) which then forms 24 discrete triggers (which may be “true” or “false”). The FCTS, receiving these 24 signals, can optionally select a subset of triggers with a mask, prescale some of the triggers and — if a valid trigger remains — issue a Level 1 Accept to initiate event readout. The trigger definition logic, masks and prescale values are all configurable on a per run basis.

The overall structure of the Level 1 system is illustrated in Figure 77. All the Level 1 hardware shown in this diagram is hosted in five 9u VME crates. The Level 1 system operates in a continuous sampling mode of processing input data and generating output trigger information at fixed time intervals. The DCH frontend electronics and the EMC UPCs send raw data to the DCT and EMT ~ 2 μ s after the event time. The DCT and EMT event processing time are 4–5 μ s and it is followed by another ~ 3 μ s in the GLT to issue an Level 1 trigger. The Level 1 trigger takes ~ 1 μ s to propagate through the fast control system and the ROMs to generate a readout just before the event data reaching the end of the 12.8 μ s detector frontend buffer.

The basic trigger primitives generated by the DCT, EMT and IFT are mostly only the azimuthal angle (ϕ) projections of the particle raw trigger signals, with only a few cases of very coarse polar angle (θ) information, such as barrel and endcap distinctions. The trigger primitives are processed in the GLT to generate up to 24 Level 1 trigger lines which are passed on to the FCTS. The DCT and EMT primitives sent to the GLT are ϕ maps signalling tracks or energy deposits in the various ϕ regions. The IFT primitive is a three-bit pattern representing sex-

Table 15

Trigger primitives. Most energy thresholds are adjustable and the listed thresholds are typical values. The detailed definition for the IFT U pattern can be found in Table 16.

	Description	Origin	No. of bits	Threshold
B	Short track reaching DCH superlayer 5	BLT	16	120 MeV/c
A	Long track reaching DCH superlayer 10	BLT	16	180 MeV/c
A'	High p_t track	PTD	16	800 MeV/c
M	All- θ MIP energy	TPB	20	100 MeV
G	All- θ intermediate energy	TPB	20	250 MeV
E	All- θ high energy	TPB	20	700 MeV
X	Forward endcap MIP	TPB	20	100 MeV
Y	Backward barrel high energy	TPB	10	1 GeV
U	Muon IFR sextant hit pattern	IFS	3	

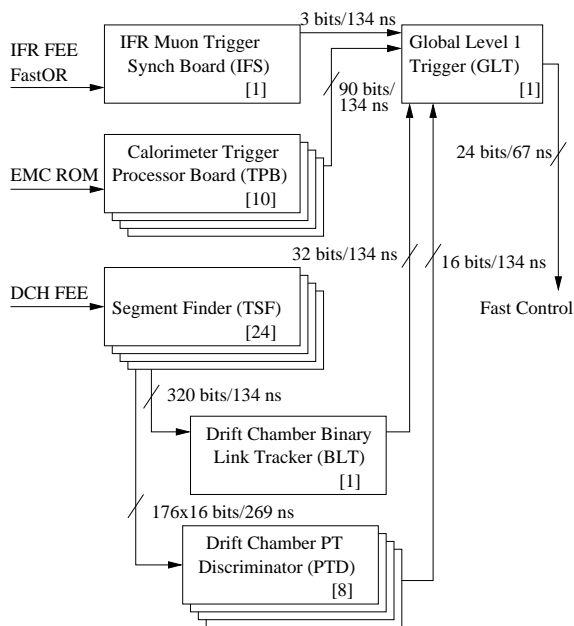


Figure 77. Level 1 system schematics for the major L1 components. The numbers on the links between different components are the transmission rates of total signal bits.

5734 tant hit topology in the IFR. The meanings of
 5735 the various trigger primitive inputs to the GLT
 5736 are summarized in Table 15. The DCT, EMT
 5737 and IFT primitives are all time-stretched to re-
 5738 flect the uncertainty in their time determination
 5739 before being sent to the GLT.

5740 The DCT, EMT and GLT contain 4-event
 5741 buffer DAQ readout capabilities similar to other
 5742 detector system front-end DAQ designs. The
 5743 DAQ data contain information from various
 5744 stages of the trigger for each event and are used
 5745 for monitoring and determining trigger efficien-
 5746 cies, as well as providing seed information for
 5747 Level 3.

5748 13.2.1. Level 1 drift chamber trigger

5749 The input data from the DCH front-end elec-
 5750 tronics (FEE) to the DCT consist of one bit, up-
 5751 dated every 269 ns, for each of the 7104 DCH
 5752 cells (see section 6.4 for details). These bits con-
 5753 vey time information from amplitude discrimina-
 5754 tors whose input is the wire signal for that cell.
 5755 The DCT outputs primitives consisting of three ϕ
 5756 maps of 16 bits each, as listed in Table 15, which
 5757 are sent to the GLT every 134 ns.

5758 From the input signal bits, the DCT contin-
 5759 uously links wire hits into “segments”, a series
 5760 of associated hits in one DCH superlayer. It
 5761 then chains segments into tracks, and finds the
 5762 ϕ position at superlayer 5 (10) for a short (long)
 5763 track. It also determines whether the tracks rep-
 5764 resent particles having transverse momentum (p_t)

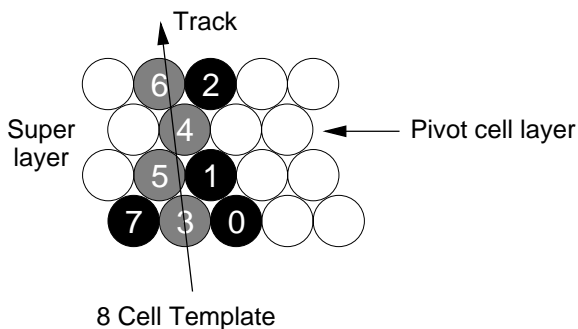


Figure 78. Track Segment Finder pivot cell group.

greater than a preset value. The algorithms of the DCT are executed in three types of modules. First, the track segments and ϕ positions are found using a set of 24 Track Segment Finder (TSF) modules [1]. The segments are then passed to the Binary Link Tracker (BLT) module [2], where they are linked into complete tracks. In parallel, detailed ϕ information for segments found in axial superlayers is transmitted to the eight PT Discriminator (PTD) modules [3], which determine if the segments are consistent with tracks of particles having a p_t greater than a user-specified minimum.

Each TSF is responsible for processing a subset of the DCH input data and extracting track segments from a set of contiguous hits within a “pivot group”, see Figure 78. For any pivot group, the cells are numbered 0 through 7, with cell 4 being the pivot cell. The shape of a pivot group was chosen such that only reasonably straight tracks originating from the interaction point can produce a segment. Each of the 24 TSF modules consists of 72-75 track segment engines, one for each pivot group, which amounts to a total of 1776 pivot groups. The engine processes the data from the eight cells in its assigned pivot group to determine whether a grouping of hit cells can produce a track segment. Depending on where a track passes through a particular cell, the resulting ionization will take one to four 269 ns clock ticks to drift to the signal wire. It is this time delay, or drift time, that the TSF uses to more accurately establish the position of

the track as well as the event time. Typically, valid segment patterns consist of hits, close together in time and in at least three out of four layers within the superlayer (to account for cell inefficiencies). At the hardware level, this is implemented using a self-triggered two-bit counter for each of the eight cells in the pivot group. A counter is enabled when a hit is registered. By incrementing the counter every 269 ns, a 16-bit address, corresponding to 65,536 possibilities, is obtained at any given clock tick. Each non-zero address is then translated by the pre-loaded look-up table (LUT) into a two-bit weight indicating whether there is a four-layer segment, a three-layer segment, or a low-quality (un-calibrated) segment. A three-layer segment with the pivot cell hit missing is also allowed. The pivot group is monitored to determine which of the three subsequent clock ticks produces the highest weight, or “best” pattern. This time information is used to align each segment in time and to create a coincidence window for all segments related to the same event. The contents of the LUT are derived from an offline calibration and consist of high-precision position and event time information. The segment arrival time is estimated mainly based on the variation of weight in time. The resulting time-adjusted weight and position are then passed on to the BLT and PTD’s. The data sent to the BLT are the ‘coarse- ϕ ’ data with just the wire address, while the ‘fine- ϕ ’ data sent to the PTD’s contain the high resolution position information. Since the TSF segment arrival time estimate combining information of several hits is considerably more precise than the 269 ns input time interval, the TSF data for BLT is transmitted at 134 ns intervals to gain on timing resolution.

The position resolution as measured from the data after calibration, is $\sim 600 \mu\text{m}$ for a 4-layer segment and $\sim 900 \mu\text{m}$ for a 3-layer segment typically. For tracks from the IP, the efficiency for all TSF segments is 97%, and the efficiency for calibrated 3-layer or 4-layer TSF segments is 94%.

The BLT receives segment hit information from all 24 TSF’s, corresponding to the entire DCH, at a rate of 320 bits every 134 ns and links them into complete tracks. The segment hits are mapped

5846 onto the DCH geometry in terms of “supercells”,
 5847 with 10 radial superlayers and 32 sectors in ϕ ,
 5848 and each bit indicates whether a segment is found
 5849 in that supercell or not. The input data to the
 5850 BLT are combined using a logical OR with a pro-
 5851 grammable mask pattern. The masking capabil-
 5852 ity allows the system to activate track segments
 5853 that correspond to dead or highly inefficient cells
 5854 so that the track efficiency does not degrade. The
 5855 linking algorithm uses an extension of a simple
 5856 method, developed for the CLEO-II trigger [5],
 5857 to link the segments into a continuous track. It
 5858 starts from the innermost superlayer, A1, and
 5859 moves radially outward. A track is found if there
 5860 is a segment hit in every layer and if the segments
 5861 in two consecutive superlayers are within a cer-
 5862 tain number of supercells (three or five depend-
 5863 ing on the superlayer type) of each other. This
 5864 allows for track curvature in the magnetic field
 5865 and dip angle variations. Up to two superlay-
 5866 ers are allowed to be missing. Tracks that reach
 5867 the outer layer of the DCH (superlayer A10) are
 5868 classified as type A. Tracks that reach the middle
 5869 layer (superlayer U5) are classified as type B. The
 5870 data are then compressed and output to the GLT
 5871 in the form of two words of 16 bits each corre-
 5872 sponding to A and B tracks. Each bit in a word
 5873 represents the “track hit” state of a supercell in
 5874 the designated superlayer.

5875 The eight PTD’s receive the fine- ϕ informa-
 5876 tion on track segments from axial superlayers
 5877 only, and determine if the segments are consis-
 5878 tent with tracks having a p_t greater than some
 5879 configurable minimum. An envelope for tracks
 5880 above the minimum p_t is defined using the inter-
 5881 action point (IP) and a track segment position in
 5882 one of the “seed” superlayers, A7 or A10. A high
 5883 p_t A’ candidate is identified when there are suffi-
 5884 cient track segments with accurate ϕ information
 5885 lie inside this envelope.

5886 The processing on each PTD is subdivided in
 5887 eight processing engines, one for each supercell
 5888 in each of the two superlayers A7 and A10. The
 5889 principal components in each engine are an algo-
 5890 rithmic processor and LUT’s containing the lim-
 5891 its for each individual seed position. The contents
 5892 of the LUT’s thus specify the allowed track seg-
 5893 ment positions for each of the three other axial

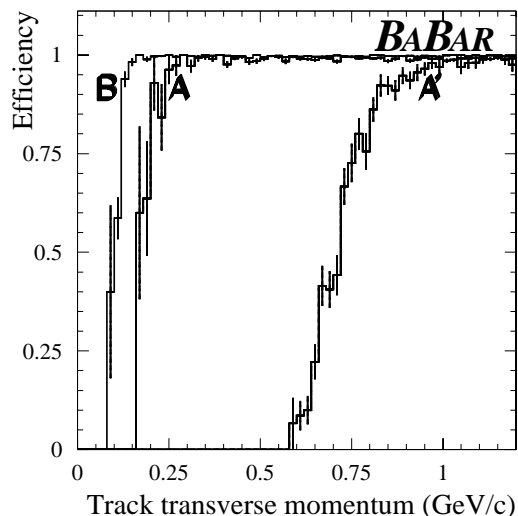


Figure 79. DCT track efficiency vs. p_t , where the A’ threshold is set to 800 MeV/c.

5894 superlayers and consequently define the effective
 5895 p_t discrimination threshold.

5896 The resulting p_t turn-on for the PTD A’ tracks
 5897 is shown in Figure 79 together with the BLT A,B
 5898 track efficiency.

5899 Each of the three main boards relies heavily on
 5900 multiple FPGA’s [4] which perform the on-board
 5901 control and algorithmic functions. All cabling is
 5902 handled by a small (6u) back-of-crate interface
 5903 behind each main board.

5904 13.2.2. Level 1 calorimeter trigger

5905 The input data for the EMT are 280 “tower
 5906 sums” in the calorimeter. The EMC barrel con-
 5907 sists of an array of 48×120 ($\theta \times \phi$) crystals. These
 5908 are grouped into “towers” of 8×3 , giving 6 tow-
 5909 ers in θ by 40 in ϕ . Each barrel tower therefore
 5910 corresponds to 24 crystals. The endcap is divided
 5911 into 40 wedges in ϕ , making a further 40 towers,
 5912 each containing between 19 and 22 crystals. The
 5913 towers thus form an array of 7×40 covering the
 5914 whole of the EMC. The energies of crystals in
 5915 each tower, if above a threshold of 10 MeV, are
 5916 summed and sent to the EMT as an unsigned 16-

5917 bit word every 269 ns on dedicated cables from
5918 the EMC UPC's.

5919 The EMT primitives consist of five types of ϕ
5920 maps, as listed Table 15, which are sent to the
5921 GLT every 134 ns. Further details of the EMT
5922 system can be found in [6].

5923 For each of the 40 ϕ positions, the EMT al-
5924 gorithm sums the seven tower energies in θ and
5925 sends the resulting sum to a eight-tap finite
5926 impulse response (FIR) filter [reference needed].
5927 The FIR output zero-crossing time is used as the
5928 estimate of the time of the deposit. The energy is
5929 determined from this zero-crossing by a time off-
5930 set, tuned to coincide with the peak of the shaped
5931 EMC pulse. This energy is compared with five
5932 thresholds, one for each of the ϕ maps, and the
5933 corresponding primitive bit is set if the energy is
5934 above the threshold.

5935 The conversion of the tower data into the GLT
5936 ϕ bits is performed by ten Trigger Processor
5937 Boards (TPB). Each TPB receives data from 28
5938 towers, corresponding to a strip of 7×4 in $\theta \times \phi$,
5939 and so performs the algorithm for four ϕ posi-
5940 tions. In addition, data from the towers border-
5941 ing this strip are needed. Each TPB receives sum-
5942 mary data from another TPB for the seven towers
5943 in θ which are at the ϕ position immediately
5944 next to its 28 towers. Each TPB also outputs the
5945 equivalent data to another TPB for the seven towers
5946 in θ at the highest ϕ position of its 28 towers.
5947 These “nearest neighbour” data allow energy de-
5948 posits which overlap two TPB's to be accurately
5949 reconstructed. The complete algorithm is imple-
5950 mented in one FPGA [7] for each ϕ position, with
5951 four identical components per TPB.

5952 The basic performance of the EMT can be ex-
5953 pressed through the efficiency and timing jitter of
5954 the trigger primitives. The efficiency of the primi-
5955 tives can be measured by the number of times a
5956 trigger bit is set as a function of the actual en-
5957 ergy reconstructed offline in the EMC. Figure 80
5958 shows this efficiency for energies around the M
5959 threshold. The trigger bit changes from 10% to
5960 90% efficiency over a range from 110 to 145 MeV
5961 and is at the full efficiency of 99% by the aver-
5962 age minimum ionizing particle (MIP) energy of
5963 180 MeV.

5964 The EMT time jitter with respect to the en-

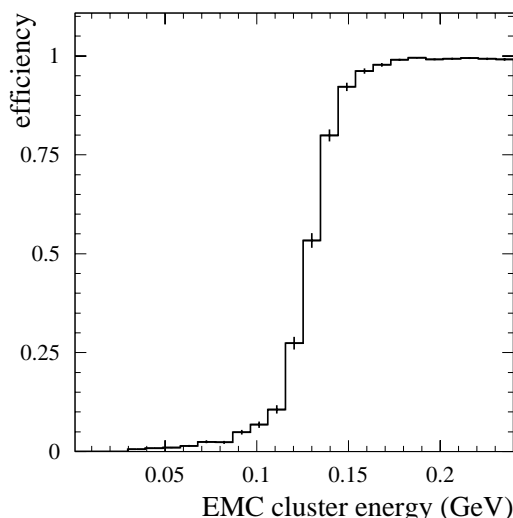


Figure 80. EMT M efficiency vs. EMC cluster energy for an M threshold setting of 120 MeV.

5965 ergy deposit time is measured by comparing the
5966 FIR output time offline with the DCH track start
5967 time determination, t_0 . The difference has an
5968 RMS of 150 ns, and 97% are within the ± 500 ns
5969 window. The event timing is considerably more
5970 precise when averaging over many hits.

5971 13.2.3. Level 1 IFR trigger

5972 The IFT is used for triggering on μ pairs and
5973 for diagnostics. For the purposes of the trigger,
5974 the IFR is divided in ten sectors, namely the six
5975 barrel sextants and the four half-endcap doors.
5976 The inputs to the IFT are the “Fast OR” signals
5977 which cover all ϕ strips from eight selected layers
5978 in each sector. The output to the GLT consists
5979 of three bits every 134 ns.

5980 A majority logic algorithm defines trigger ob-
5981 jects for every sector if at least four of the eight
5982 trigger layers have hits inside a time window of
5983 134 ns. The IFR Trigger Synchronization (IFS)
5984 module processes the trigger objects from the ten
5985 sectors and generates the three-bit trigger word
5986 (U) encoding seven possible exclusive trigger con-
5987 ditions, as defined in Table 16. The trigger $U \geq 5$,

5988 for example, covers all the 2-prong μ -pair topolo- 6023
 5989 gies. 6024

Table 16
 IFR trigger pattern (U) definition.

U	Trigger condition
1	other ≥ 2 μ topologies not in U=5-7
2	1 μ in backward endcap
3	1 μ in forward endcap
4	1 μ in barrel
5	2 back-back μ 's in barrel + 1 forward μ
6	1 μ in barrel + 1 forward μ
7	2 back-back μ 's in barrel

5990 The efficiency of the IFT has been evaluated 6036
 5991 with cosmic rays triggered by the DCT and cross- 6037
 5992 ing the detector close to the interaction point. 6038
 5993 For these events, 98% have been triggered by the 6039
 5994 IFT as events with at least one track, and 73% 6040
 5995 as events with two tracks, inside the geometrical 6041
 5996 region of the IFR. Most of the inefficiency is con- 6042
 5997 centrated in the angular regions between two ad- 6043
 5998 jacent sextants and between the barrel and end- 6044
 5999 caps. 6045
 6046
 6047

6000 13.2.4. Level 1 global trigger

6001 The GLT receives inputs consisting of the prim- 6048
 6002 itives from the DCT, EMT and IFT, as listed in 6049
 6003 Table 15, every 134 ns. Due to the different la- 6050
 6004 tencies of the primitives, the GLT first aligns the 6051
 6005 input signals using configurable delays. It then 6052
 6006 forms some additional combined ϕ maps from the 6053
 6007 DCT and EMT data. A total of 16 ϕ maps are in- 6054
 6008 put to a LUT which treats each ϕ map as an input 6055
 6009 address and a three-bit output for each trigger ob- 6056
 6010 ject which counts, e.g., the number of B tracks or 6057
 6011 number of M clusters. To count as distinct trig- 6058
 6012 ger objects, the map bits are typically required to 6059
 6013 have a separation of more than one ϕ bin.

6014 These 16 counts not only include the standard 6060
 6015 inputs of A, B, A', M, G, E and Y, but also 6061
 6016 matched objects such as BM for B tracks matched 6062
 6017 to an M cluster in ϕ . B and M are also used to 6063
 6018 derive additional back-to-back objects, B* and M*, 6064
 6019 where the count requires a pair of ϕ bits sepa- 6065
 6020 rated by a configurable angle of typically $\sim 120^\circ$. 6066
 6021 E and M are also used to make an EM* object 6067
 6022 for back-to-back EM pairs. 6068
 6069

6023 The 16 counts plus the IFT hit pattern are 6024
 6025 then used to form 24 raw trigger lines. The fi- 6026
 6027 nal stage logic selects the highest priority trigger 6028
 6029 to determine the Level 1 trigger time and latches 6030
 6031 the other triggers compatible in time for the 24 6031
 6032 line trigger output. The trigger decision logic for 6032
 6033 each trigger line is a logical AND of the 17 out- 6033
 6034 puts from operations applied to the object counts. 6034
 6035 The decision operations on each object can be: 6035
 6036 always-pass, or \geq , = or $<$ to a configurable cut 6036
 6037 parameter. The trigger logic evaluates the time- 6037
 6038 centroid of the highest priority line with a 67 ns 6038
 6039 sampling period based on the last $\sim 1 \mu s$ of his- 6039
 6040 tory. This faster sampling rate can improve out- 6040
 6041 put trigger timing resolution in the case of send- 6041
 6042 ing output at the time-centroid of a trigger which 6042
 6043 is on for an odd number of 134 ns intervals. If a 6043
 6044 higher priority trigger line starts within this time, 6044
 6045 the process resets to follow the higher priority line 6045
 6046 instead. There is an optional configurable output 6046
 6047 delay for each line to control the Level 1 trigger 6047
 6048 to be set as late as allowed by its timing jitter 6048
 6049 so as to minimize the chance of early background 6049
 6050 hits poisoning real signals in the SVT single hit 6050
 6051 electronics. 6051

6052 The 24 bit GLT output signal is sent to the fast 6052
 6053 control system every 67 ns, which handles trig- 6053
 6054 ger mask selection and prescaling. The achieved 6054
 6055 timing resolution for hadronic data events has an 6055
 6056 RMS of 52 ns and 99% of the events are within 6056
 6057 77 ns. 6057

6058 The GLT consists of a single 9u VME mod- 6058
 6059 ule. Most of the logic, including diagnostic and 6059
 6060 DAQ memories, are implemented in FPGA's [4]. 6060
 6061 The LUT section is an array of 16 memory chips 6061
 6062 with 8 Mbytes of VME downloadable configura- 6062
 6063 tion data. 6063

6060 13.3. Level 1 trigger performance and op- 6061 6062 erational experience

6063 The Level 1 trigger configuration consists of 6063
 6064 pure DCT, pure EMT, mixed and prescaled trig- 6064
 6065 gers, not only aimed for maximum efficiency and 6065
 6066 background suppression, but also for the conve- 6066
 6067 nience of trigger efficiency determination. The 6067
 6068 trigger lines are designed to collectively preserve 6068
 6069 the many types of physics interactions. Although 6069
 most trigger lines have as their primary target a

specific physics source, they are not strictly classified to only serve that source. For example, some of the two-particle triggers are not only efficient for Bhabha, $\mu\mu$ and $\tau\tau$ events, but are also useful for selecting jetlike hadronic events and some rare B decays.

The efficiencies and rates of some selected Level 1 trigger lines are listed in Table 17 and for various physics processes. Although triggering on generic $B\bar{B}$ events is relatively easy, it is essential to make sure high efficiencies are also maintained for the important rare B decay processes which are typically less distinctive in decay multiplicity. We therefore include efficiencies for events containing two bench mark processes of $B^0 \rightarrow \pi^0\pi^0$ and $B^- \rightarrow \tau\bar{\nu}$ (while the other B in the event decay generically) in Table 17.

The efficiencies for the hadronic events are absolute efficiencies including acceptance losses, based on MC simulation including local inefficiency effects calibrated using single particle triggering efficiencies from data. The efficiencies for τ -pair events are for MC “fiducial” events, having two or more tracks with $p_t > 120$ MeV/ c originating close to the IP and with θ in the range to reach at least DCH superlayer U5. The Bhabha and μ -pair efficiencies are determined from the data, for events with 2 high momentum particles back to back in e^+e^- center of mass frame, and within the EMC fiducial volume. It can be seen that with the exception of $\tau\tau$ events, there are efficient orthogonal triggers using only DCT or only EMT/IFT for these processes. The efficiencies predicted by the MC are generally in good agreement with data when tested using events passing typical analysis selections and based on orthogonal triggers. Prescaled triggers with a very open acceptance of physics events, such as ($B \geq 2$ & $A \geq 1$) or ($M \geq 2$) are also used to measure the trigger efficiencies.

The trigger rates listed in Table 17 are for a typical run with HER (LER) currents at 650 mA (1350 mA) and a luminosity of 2.2×10^{33} $\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$. These are stable to within 20% for the same PEP-II setup. Longer term they can be 50% higher after a major shutdown, when starting with a poor vacuum, and gradually improve in the following months. There are also occasional

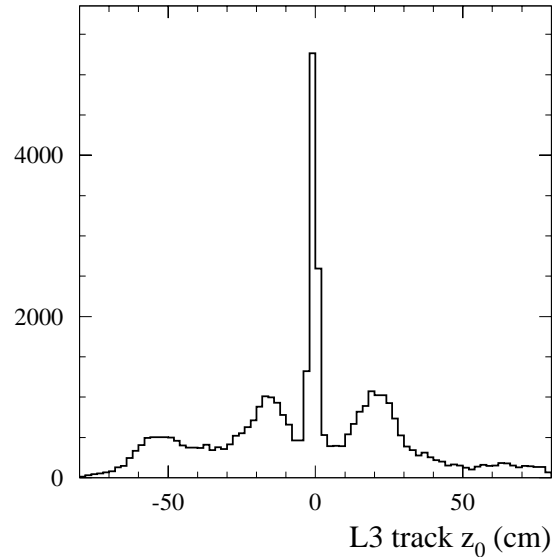


Figure 81. Track z_0 for all Level 1 triggers.

background spikes which can double the Level 1 rate. However, even many of these spikes cannot induce significant dead time due to the Level 1 2 kHz capability. The expected Level 1 trigger rate for the design luminosity of 3×10^{33} $\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$, based on current observations, will be well below 2 kHz.

Within the typical Level 1 rate of 970 Hz, Bhabha and annihilation physics events amount to ~ 130 Hz. There is also 100 Hz of cosmics and 20 Hz of random beam crossing triggers. The dominant source of background which causes the remaining triggers is due to lost particles interacting with the beam line components. The distribution of track z_0 (as reconstructed by Level 3) for all input Level 1 triggers are shown in Figure 81.

The most prominent peaks at $z = \pm 20$ cm correspond to the end flange of the beam pipe. The peak at $z = -55$ cm corresponds to a step in the synchrotron mask.

The Level 1 trigger hardware operation has been very stable. For the first one and half years of operation, there have been only 4 hardware failures in the whole Level 1 system, mainly auxiliary or communication boards. The only occa-

Table 17

Level 1 Trigger efficiency (%) and rates (Hz) at a luminosity of trigger $2.2 \times 10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ for some selected triggers lines applied to various physics processes. The symbols refer to the counts for each object. The unfilled “–” entries are cases where the line is not intended for this physics source.

Level 1 Trigger	$\epsilon_{B\bar{B}}$	$\epsilon_{B \rightarrow \pi^0 \pi^0}$	$\epsilon_{B \rightarrow \tau \nu}$	$\epsilon_{c\bar{c}}$	ϵ_{uds}	ϵ_{ee}	$\epsilon_{\mu\mu}$	$\epsilon_{\tau\tau}$	Rate
$A \geq 3$ & $B^* \geq 1$	97.1	66.4	81.8	88.9	81.1	–	–	17.7	180
$A \geq 1$ & $B^* \geq 1$ & $A' \geq 1$	95.0	63.0	83.2	89.2	85.2	98.6	99.1	79.9	410
All pure DCT OR	99.1	79.7	92.2	95.3	90.6	98.9	99.1	80.6	560
$M \geq 3$ & $M^* \geq 1$	99.7	98.6	93.7	98.5	94.7	–	–	53.7	160
$EM^* \geq 1$	71.4	94.9	55.5	77.1	79.5	97.8	–	65.8	150
All pure EMT OR	99.8	99.2	95.5	98.8	95.6	99.2	–	77.6	340
$B \geq 3$ & $A \geq 2$ & $M \geq 2$	99.4	81.2	90.3	94.8	87.8	–	–	19.7	170
$M^* \geq 1$ & $A \geq 1$ & $A' \geq 1$	95.1	68.8	83.7	90.1	87.0	97.8	95.9	78.2	250
$E \geq 1$ & $B \geq 2$ & $A \geq 1$	72.1	92.4	60.2	77.7	79.2	99.3	–	72.8	140
$M^* \geq 1$ & $U \geq 5$ (μ -pair)	–	–	–	–	–	–	60.3	–	70
All Level 1 triggers	>99.9	99.8	99.7	99.9	98.2	>99.9	99.6	94.5	970

6143 sional online adjustment needed was for the EMT
6144 tower mask to temporarily suppress noisy channels
6145 in the EMC electronics.

6146 13.4. Level 3 trigger system

6147 The Level 3 trigger makes its selection based
6148 upon the complete event data from *BABAR* pro-
6149 cessed by a farm of 32 commercial Unix proces-
6150 sors. The Level 3 also has access to the output of
6151 the Level 1 trigger processors and FCTS trigger
6152 scalars. Level 3 operates by improving upon the
6153 themes defined in Level 1. For example, better
6154 DCH tracking (vertex resolution) and EMC clus-
6155 tering allow for greater rejection of beam back-
6156 grounds and more effective prescaling of Bhab-
6157 has. Filters to select specific rates of luminosity
6158 and calibration events are also implemented.

6159 The Level 3 system runs within the Online
6160 Event Processing (OEP) framework (see sec-
6161 tion ??). Along with other responsibilities, OEP
6162 hands events to the Level 3 algorithm, then
6163 prescales and logs those which trigger. The exe-
6164 cution time budget for the complete Level 3 code
6165 is 10 ms per event on a 333 MHz Sun Ultra5 node.

6166 To provide optimum flexibility under different
6167 running conditions, Level 3 was designed accord-
6168 ing to a general logic model that can be config-
6169 ured to support an unlimited variety of event se-
6170 lection mechanisms. The logic model provides for

6171 a number of different, independent classification
6172 tests, called “paths”, that are executed in par-
6173 allel, together with a mechanism for combining
6174 these tests into the final set of classification deci-
6175 sions. Thus, modified or new algorithms can be
6176 handled with no changes to the underlying logic.

6177 The Level 3 design is based on a three-phase
6178 logic model. In the first phase, events are classi-
6179 fied on the basis of the Level 1 and FCTS deci-
6180 sions (the 32 FCTS output lines). These classifi-
6181 cation decisions are referred to as Level 3 “input
6182 lines”. Any number of Level 3 input lines may
6183 be defined, but it is required that each Level 1
6184 output line must be used in defining at least one
6185 Level 3 input line, thereby ensuring that any in-
6186 teresting physics events selected by Level 1 are
6187 viewed by Level 3.

6188 In the second phase, events are tested using a
6189 series of “scripts”, each of which requires the logi-
6190 cal AND of various event properties. The decision
6191 of which scripts to execute is determined by the
6192 values of the Level 3 input lines. Each script con-
6193 structs objects of interest from the raw event data
6194 and tests the event for the logical AND of vari-
6195 ous properties, e.g., charged particle multiplicity,
6196 EMC energy, etc. Each script returns a pass/fail
6197 decision in the form of a flag.

6198 In the final phase, the Level 3 output lines
6199 are formed by considering combinations of the

6200 results of the scripts. Each output line is de- 6247
 6201 fined as the logical OR of a subset of the script 6248
 6202 flags. The Level 3 design allows output lines to 6249
 6203 consider certain script flags as vetoes, rejecting 6250
 6204 events that otherwise satisfy the line’s require- 6251
 6205 ment if the veto is true. As an example, Bhabha- 6252
 6206 scattering events, a particularly high-rate back- 6253
 6207 ground for scripts which select events based on 6254
 6208 charged tracks or EMC energy deposits, are re- 6255
 6209 jected by a Bhabha veto from lines that corre- 6256
 6210 spond to interesting physics and therefore may 6257
 6211 not be prescaled by OEP. 6258

6212 The Level 3 implementation depends crucially 6259
 6213 on several aspects of Framework. Any code in 6260
 6214 the form of “modules” can be included and run- 6261
 6215 time configuration using a standard Tcl inter- 6262
 6216 face is allowed. Framework supports multiple 6263
 6217 execution paths and Level 3 exploits this fea- 6264
 6218 ture. When multiple paths are used, the same 6265
 6219 instance of a module may be included in mul- 6266
 6220 tiple paths. Framework ensures that the event 6267
 6221 processing for such modules is only invoked once 6268
 6222 per event. Hence calculations done by a mod- 6269
 6223 ule are not repeated even if the module is called 6270
 6224 more than once. Thus, the same module may be 6271
 6225 used on multiple paths without incurring signifi- 6272
 6226 cant CPU overhead. Finally, Framework provides 6273
 6227 the ability to terminate processing of an event 6274
 6228 before all modules have been executed. Thus, 6275
 6229 a “filter module” can deliver a pass/fail indica- 6276
 6230 tor to Framework for a given event. If the filter 6277
 6231 module fails the event, Framework terminates the 6278
 6232 path and proceeds immediately to either the next 6279
 6233 path, if any paths remain to be executed, or to 6280
 6234 the next event. 6281

6235 13.4.1. Level 3 drift chamber tracking al- 6283 6236 gorithm 6284

6237 A large fraction of the events which passes 6285
 6238 Level 1 but must be rejected by Level 3, is back- 6286
 6239 ground events in which charged particles are pro- 6287
 6240 duced in material located close to the IP. Level 1 6288
 6241 does not currently have sufficient tracking res- 6289
 6242 olution to identify these background tracks but 6290
 6243 Level 3 can do full three-dimensional track find- 6291
 6244 ing and fitting. The DCH-based algorithm, L3Dch, 6292
 6245 consists of fast pattern recognition, that is effi- 6293
 6246 cient for tracks coming from the IP, and a track 6294

fitter, which determines the five helix track pa-
 rameters for tracks with p_t above 250 MeV/c.

To speed up the process of pattern recogni-
 tion, L3Dch starts with the track segments from
 the TSF system. The TSF provides an address
 that can be decoded to give information about
 which wires were hit in the pivot cell and an es-
 timated ϕ position. To improve the resolution
 L3Dch makes use of the actual DCH hit informa-
 tion for hits which were reported as used on the
 TSF segments.

For those TSF segments that have a staggered
 pattern indicating a simple solution to the left-
 right ambiguity for each layer, a track t_0 is deter-
 mined. The t_0 values for each segment in an event
 are binned and the average value in the most
 populated bin is used as the estimated event t_0 .
 Almost all events, physics or background, which
 pass Level 1 have enough segments to form a t_0
 estimate. The rms resolution on this estimate is
 1.8 ns for Bhabha events and 3.8 ns for hadronic
 events.

The actual pattern recognition for L3Dch is
 done with a look up table. This track table is
 made by considering the DCH as divided into 120
 ϕ sectors, corresponding to the number of cells in
 the innermost layers. The track table is made up
 of the ϕ sectors for all tracks originating within
 2 cm of the IP in the xy plane and within 10 cm
 in z and having a p_t above 250 MeV/c. The pat-
 tern recognition consists of looping over the table
 entries looking for matches to segments found by
 the TSF’s. The located set of segments for a given
 track is then passed to the track fitter. In order
 to account for inefficiencies, the track table allows
 for up to two missing DCH layers.

The track fitter is provided with both the track
 segments and the “seed” track which made the
 entry in the lookup table. From this informa-
 tion, the track fitter fits the five helix param-
 eters, adding segments not found in the original
 pattern recognition, if needed. Hits which have
 large residuals are dropped from the fit. The fit
 is iterated so that segments close to the initial
 track fit can be added to the track before a new
 fit is performed. The final fit does not demand
 that the track originate from the IP.

The two-track miss distances near the IP for

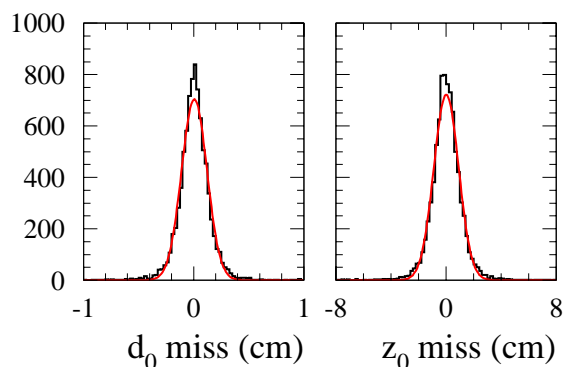


Figure 82. Level 3 track d_0 and z_0 miss distance for Bhabha events.

Bhabha events are plotted in Figure 82. The individual track impact parameter resolution can be derived from the width of these distributions by multiplying by $1/\sqrt{2}$. This gives an Level 3 track d_0 resolution of 0.83 mm and an average z_0 resolution of 6.9 mm. Similarly, fitting the $1/p_t$ difference between the 2 tracks in μ -pair events yields a p_t resolution of $\delta p_t/p_t \sim 0.019 \cdot p_t/\text{GeV}/c$ for Level 3 tracks.

13.4.2. Level 3 calorimeter clustering algorithm

A number of events which are interesting for CP physics, calibration or luminosity measurements consist essentially of only neutral particles. Hence an all-neutral trigger for Level 3 based on information from the EMC is essential. In addition, calorimeter information is vital to complement the drift chamber data for the identification of Bhabha events, in particular for the veto algorithm. Finally, partial orthogonality in triggering based on information from the DCH and the EMC is necessary to obtain a thorough understanding of the efficiency of triggers based on either of these systems.

The Level 3 EMC-based trigger algorithm, L3Emc, operates by finding EMC clusters at energies down to the MIP level. The clustering is done in two steps, the processing of the EMC data to assemble lists of adjacent crystals with significant energy deposits and the formation of clusters and

computation of integrated quantities, such as the total energy, centroid position, and cluster moments.

Out of the total 6580 crystals in the calorimeter, the EMC at present sends typically 1900 so-called “EMC digi’s” per event, the vast majority of these being caused by electronics noise. An EMC digi encodes the peak energy and time of the crystal waveform as determined by the EMC feature extraction. To filter out noise, L3Emc applies an energy threshold of currently 30 MeV and a time-window cut of $t > 5.7 \mu\text{s}$ on the raw data on a per crystal basis. For the remaining crystals, raw energies and times are converted into physical units to create “L3Emc digi’s”.

The L3Emc digis are filled into a linear list and fed into a fast clustering algorithm that performs a single iteration to split it into sub-lists of neighboring crystals. The neighboring information is not buried in the algorithm but is configured for each crystal by a lookup table. The lookup table addresses are mapped to detector coordinates by a hash algorithm using module, fiber, channel id’s. From the resulting lists of adjacent hits, clusters are formed by summing contiguous crystal energies. If the total energy is above 100 MeV, the Level 3 clusters are stored with an energy weighted centroid and average time, the number of crystals and a lateral and Zernicke moment [reference needed] describing the shower shape for particle identification.

13.4.3. Level 3 filters

Based on the Level 3 tracks and clusters that are computed with the tools described above, a variety of filter algorithms is implemented, which perform the event classification and background reduction.

The logging decision is essentially represented by two orthogonal sets of filters which form the open physics trigger lines and which are based on pure drift chamber and pure calorimeter information, respectively.

The drift chamber algorithms comprise two IP track filters which select events with one “tight” (high p_t) track or two “loose” tracks originating from the interaction point, respectively. The high p_t track is required to have a transverse momen-

6372 tum of $p_t > 800 \text{ MeV}/c$ and to satisfy tight vertex
6373 cuts of $|d_0| < 1.0 \text{ cm}$, $|z_0| < 7.0 \text{ cm}$. Two tracks
6374 are accepted with $p_t > 250 \text{ MeV}/c$ and somewhat
6375 looser vertex cuts of $|d_0| < 1.5 \text{ cm}$, $|z_0| < 10.0 \text{ cm}$.

6376 The calorimeter algorithm uses two cluster fil-
6377 ters which select events with either high energy
6378 deposits or high cluster multiplicity and with a
6379 high (pseudo) event mass. The event mass is cal-
6380 culated from the cluster energy sums and the en-
6381 ergy weighted centroid positions assuming mass-
6382 less particles. The filters require either 2 clusters
6383 of $E_{CM} > 350 \text{ MeV}$ in the center-of-mass or 4
6384 clusters, which form an event mass greater than
6385 1.5 GeV in both cases.

6386 At current luminosities the output of these
6387 open filters is dominated by Bhabha events, which
6388 therefore need to be rejected from the respective
6389 physics lines. This is accomplished by a Bhabha
6390 veto algorithm, which makes use of a very pure
6391 identification based on tight track-cluster match-
6392 ing criteria. The veto algorithm is separated into
6393 the 1-prong (with only a positron in the backward
6394 part of the detector) and 2-prong category (with
6395 both particles in the detector). Both algorithms
6396 impose stringent criteria on EMC energy deposits
6397 that are consistent with Bhabha events, while re-
6398 lying on both the track momenta and on E/p to
6399 allow for final state radiation. The 2-prong veto
6400 requires either a small acolinearity between the
6401 tracks in the center-of-mass or one that is con-
6402 sistent with initial state radiation (ISR), where a
6403 photon is radiated along the beam direction lead-
6404 ing to a missing energy close to the observed miss-
6405 ing track momentum.

6406 For purposes of calibration and offline luminos-
6407 ity measurements, a fraction of Bhabha events are
6408 flagged on a separate trigger line by an efficiency-
6409 oriented algorithm. The output event θ distribu-
6410 tion is ‘flattened’ using a binned prescaling mech-
6411 anism in order to obtain similar calibration statis-
6412 tics for all EMC crystals. In addition, calibration
6413 samples include radiative Bhabha events, $\gamma\gamma$ final
6414 state events and cosmic rays. Radiative Bhabha
6415 events are identified by selecting two-prong events
6416 with missing energy and requiring a calorimeter
6417 cluster in a cone around the missing momentum
6418 vector with no requirement on the cluster energy.
6419 $e^+e^- \rightarrow \gamma\gamma$ events are selected with no tracks

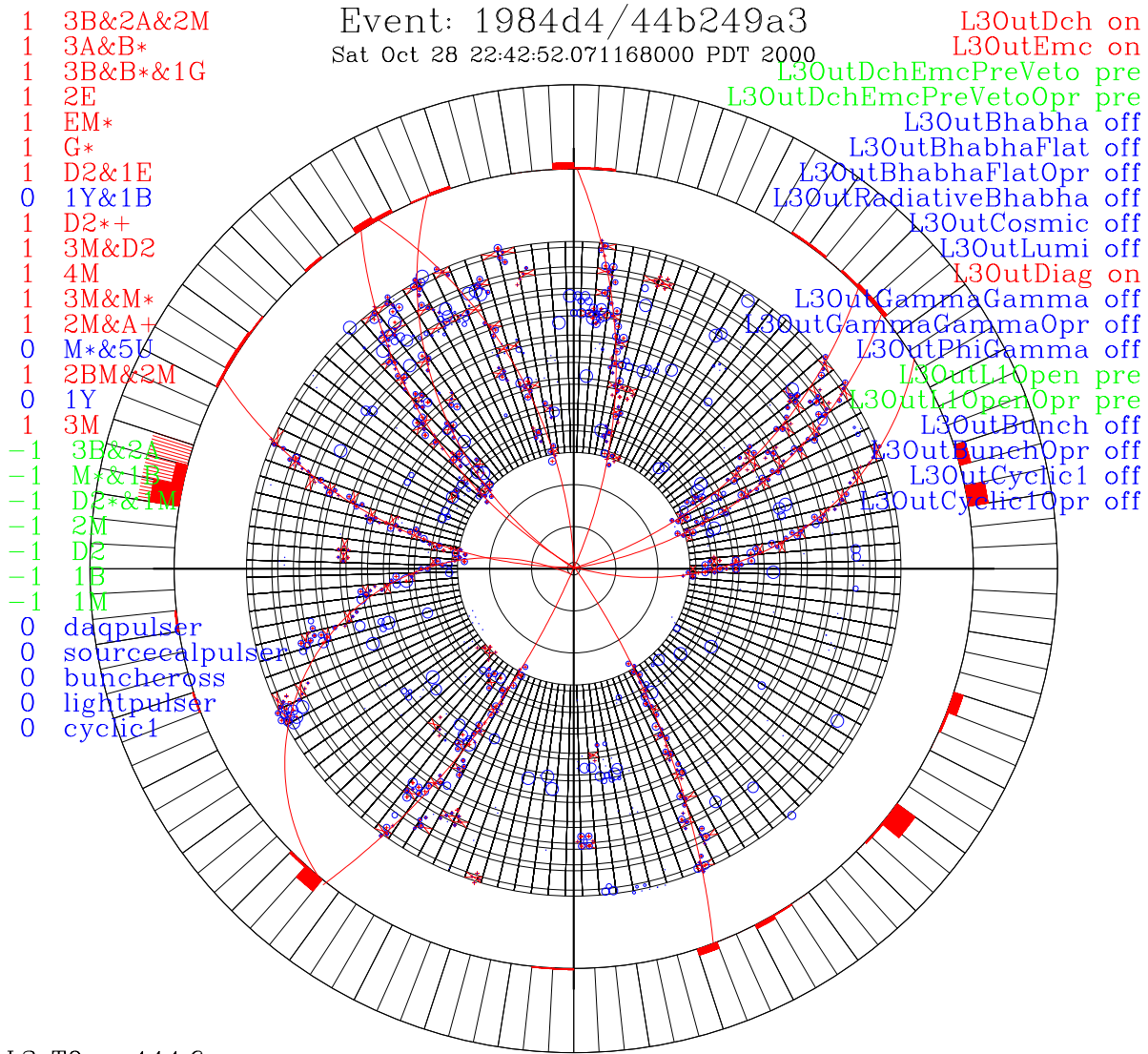
6420 and two high energy clusters back-to-back in the
6421 center-of-mass. The cosmic selection is drift-
6422 chamber-based and requires two tracks back-to-
6423 back in the laboratory frame with a small differ-
6424 ence in impact parameters and curvature, where
6425 a significant background from ISR Bhabha events
6426 faking this topology is removed based on the re-
6427 lation between the visible energy and the track
6428 momenta (as used by the 2-prong veto).

6429 As an important part of online monitoring and
6430 diagnostics, there are filters for the online lumi-
6431 nosity measurement, which is served by a track-
6432 based lepton-pair selection with a well known ef-
6433 ficiency, and hadronic filters for selection of con-
6434 tinuum and $B\bar{B}$ -enriched samples. The latter two
6435 are distinguished by an event shape cut using a
6436 ratio of Fox-Wolfram moments [8]. Both selec-
6437 tions are combined for an online determination
6438 of the hadron to luminosity ratio, which provides
6439 sensitivity to the $\Upsilon(4S)$ line shape and is used to
6440 monitor the center-of-mass energy of PEP-II.

6441 13.5. Level 3 performance and operational 6442 experience

6443 The Level 3 trigger efficiencies for Level 1 ac-
6444 cepted events are tabulated in Table 18, for var-
6445 ious physics processes with similar definitions as
6446 in Table 17, based on production Level 3 pro-
6447 cessing applied to MC simulation events. High
6448 efficiencies are achieved for the DCH and EMC
6449 based filters independently for hadronic events.
6450 The comparison between data and MC Level 3
6451 trigger pass fractions for the various filters also
6452 show good agreement when requiring tracking
6453 and EMC based hadronic event selections in turn.
6454 An example of the actual Level 3 event display
6455 used for online monitoring with Level 3 recon-
6456 structed tracks and Level 3 EMC clusters is shown
6457 in Fig. 83, together with the Level 1 and Level 3
6458 trigger line status for the event.

6459 For a typical run on the $\Upsilon(4s)$ peak with
6460 an average luminosity of $2.6 \times 10^{33} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$, the
6461 Level 3 total output rate is 120 Hz and the event
6462 composition is tabulated in table 19. The desired
6463 physics sources contribute 13% of the total output
6464 and the calibration and diagnostic samples take
6465 up 40% of the total. An improved version of the
6466 Level 3 IP track filter to be deployed in the 2001



L3 T0 = 444.6 ns
L1AT0 = 0 ns
Delay: 1ms MC T0 = 0 ns

11 tracks, 15 clusters

Figure 83. An Level 3 event display. The small circles and small crosses in the DCH volume are DCH hits and TSF segment hit wires respectively. The filled EMC crystals represent energy deposit (full crystal depth=2 GeV) from Level 3 EMC clusters.

Table 18
Level 3 Trigger efficiency (%) for various physics processes.

Level 3 Trigger	$\epsilon_{B\bar{B}}$	$\epsilon_{B\rightarrow\pi^0\pi^0}$	$\epsilon_{B\rightarrow\tau\nu}$	$\epsilon_{c\bar{c}}$	ϵ_{uds}	$\epsilon_{\tau\tau}$
1 track filter	89.9	69.9	86.5	89.2	88.2	94.1
2 track filter	98.9	84.1	94.5	96.1	93.2	87.6
Combined DCH filters	99.4	89.1	96.6	97.1	95.4	95.5
2 cluster filter	25.8	91.2	14.5	39.2	48.7	34.3
4 cluster filter	93.5	95.2	62.3	87.4	85.5	37.8
Combined EMC filters	93.5	95.7	62.3	87.4	85.6	46.3
Combined DCH+EMC filters	>99.9	99.3	98.1	99.0	97.6	97.3
Combined L1+L3	>99.9	99.1	97.8	98.9	95.8	92.0

Table 19
Level 3 output event composition at a luminosity of $2.6\times 10^{33}\text{ cm}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1}$.

Event type	Rate (Hz)
L1,L3 pass through diagnostics	7
Random triggers, cosmics	2
Calibration Bhabhas	30
$\gamma\gamma$, Radiative Bhabha	10
Total calibration/diagnostics	49
Hadrons and $\tau\tau, \mu\mu$	16
Unidentified Bhabhas	18
Other QED, 2-photon	13
Beam wall interactions	26
Total physics accept	73

run is expected to reduce the beam wall background by a factor of 2, which will be sufficient to meet the 120Hz maximum total output rate for the design luminosity of $3\times 10^{33}\text{ cm}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1}$, despite the somewhat larger calibration sample demand than the original design.

At the current performance, the Level 3 executable takes an average processing time of 8.5 ms per event on a current 333 MHz Sun Ultra-5 farm node. At the highest Level 1 input rates, the Level 3 process runs at $\sim 72\%$ CPU usage, while the rest is spent in OEP (including the network event builder) and in the operating system kernel. This results in an estimated maximum Level 1 input rate of about 2700 Hz with 32 nodes, which is well above the design value of 2 kHz.

13.6. Summary and outlook

Both the Level 1 and Level 3 trigger systems have met the efficiency and the maximum rate requirements for the original design luminosity of $3\times 10^{33}\text{ cm}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1}$. The triggering efficiencies for $B\bar{B}$ events are generally well over the 99% design goal for both Level 1 and Level 3. The orthogonal trigger setup based on DCH only and EMC only information, for both Level 1 and Level 3, has successfully delivered stability and measurability of the overall trigger efficiency. The current system also provides a solid foundation with a clear upgrade path to higher luminosities of $10^{34}\text{ cm}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1}$ or more.

Future Level 1 trigger improvements will mostly come from further background rejection capability afforded by algorithm refinements and upgrades of the DCT. This is essential for reducing the load on the DAQ and Level 3 at much higher luminosities. Refined algorithms for the PTD and BLT are expected to be deployed in the 2001 run. The new PTD algorithm will effectively narrow the track d_0 acceptance window, while new BLT algorithm will narrow the track z_0 acceptance. For the longer term, a major DCT upgrade design is underway for a new set of trigger boards with the capability of selecting tracks with a narrow z_0 window around the IP. The TSF segment spatial resolution for the stereo layers can be utilized to provide segment z coordinates at $\sim 2\text{ cm}$ resolution. The implied track z_0 resolution of $\sim 4\text{ cm}$ show good promise for rejecting majority of the beam wall background events at $z = \pm 20\text{ cm}$.

The future improvement for Level 3 will also emphasize background rejection. The current physics filter algorithms are still rather simple and there is room for better efficiency at the same background rejection rate. The remaining beam-wall background event fraction are expected to be significantly reduced at higher luminosities. The main tasks will be more aggressive rejection of Bhabha events and suppression of uninteresting QED and two-photon events. To enhance the physics topology recognition capability, a major source of improvement is expected to be L3Dch tracking for low momentum tracks at $p_t < 250 \text{ MeV}/c$. Given the rapid growth of computing technology, a rather moderate CPU upgrade for the Level 3 online farm in the near future will be sufficient to keep up with higher luminosities of greater than $10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$, as well as having the CPU capacity for improved Level 3 algorithms.

REFERENCES

1. A. Berenyi *et al.*, “Continuously Live Image Processor for Drift Chamber Track Segment Triggering”, IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci. 46 (1999) 348.
2. A. Berenyi *et al.*, “A Binary Link Tracker for the BABAR Level 1 Trigger System”, IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci. 46 (1999) 928.
3. A. Berenyi *et al.*, “A Real-Time Transverse Momentum Discriminator for the BABAR Level 1 Trigger System”, submitted to IEEE Transactions on Nuclear Science.
4. The FPGA’s used in the DCT and GLT are from ORCA 2C series manufactured by Lument Technologies.
5. K. Kinoshita, Nucl. Instr. and Methods A276 (1989) 242.
6. P. D. Dauncey *et al.*, “Design and Performance of the Level 1 Calorimeter Trigger for the BaBar Detector”, submitted to IEEE Transactions on Nuclear Science.
7. The FPGA’s used for EMT algorithm logic are Xilinx 4020E.
8. G. C. Fox and S. Wolfram, Nucl. Phys. B149 (1979) 413.

14. The Online Computing System

14.1. Overview

The BABAR online computing system comprises the data acquisition chain from the common front-end electronics, through the embedded processors in the data acquisition system and the Level 3 trigger, to the logging of event data. It also includes those components required for detector and data acquisition control and monitoring, immediate data quality monitoring, and online calibration.

14.1.1. Design requirements

The data acquisition chain was designed to meet the following basic performance requirements. It must support a Level 1 trigger accept rate of up to $\sim 2000 \text{ Hz}$, with an average event size of $\sim 32 \text{ kbytes}$ and a maximum output (Level 3 trigger accept) rate of 120 Hz . While performing these functions it must not contribute more than a time-averaged 3% to dead time during normal data acquisition.

The online system is also required to be capable of performing data acquisition simultaneously on independent *partitions* — sets of detector system components — to support calibrations and diagnostics.

The final design embodies many other basic requirements to ensure its effective functioning as described in the following paragraphs.

Normal detector operation, data acquisition and routine calibrations are performed efficiently and under the control of a simple user interface with facilities for detecting, diagnosing, and recovering from common error conditions.

Following standard practice, the event data acquired by the system is subjected to monitoring. Such monitoring is configurable by experts and designed to detect anomalies in the detector systems which, if present, are reported to operators for rapid assessment and, if necessary, corrective action.

Environmental conditions of the detector, such as the state of low and high voltage power, high purity gas supplies, and of the accelerator, such as beam luminosity and currents, are measured and recorded in a fashion that permits its asso-

6608 ciation with the event data logged. Conditions
 6609 relevant to data quality are monitored for con-
 6610 sistency with specified standards. Operators are
 6611 alerted if these are not met. Data-taking is in-
 6612 hibited or otherwise flagged if conditions are in-
 6613 compatible with maintaining the quality of the
 6614 data.

6615 Operational configurations, calibration results,
 6616 software versions in use, and routine and error
 6617 messages are also recorded and correlatable, in
 6618 support of the reconstruction of the conditions
 6619 of operation when analyzing data or diagnosing
 6620 problems.

6621 14.1.2. System Components

6622 The online computing system is designed as a
 6623 set of subsystems using elements of a common
 6624 software infrastructure running on a dedicated
 6625 collection of hardware.

6626 The major subsystems are:

- 6627 • Online Dataflow (ODF) – responsible for
 6628 communication with and control of the de-
 6629 tector systems’ front-end electronics, and
 6630 the acquisition and building of event data
 6631 from them
- 6632 • Online Event Processing (OEP) – respon-
 6633 sible for processing of complete events, in-
 6634 cluding Level 3 (software) triggering, data
 6635 quality monitoring, and the final stages of
 6636 calibrations;
- 6637 • Logging Manager – responsible for receiving
 6638 selected events sent from OEP and writing
 6639 them to disk files for use as input to the
 6640 “Prompt Reconstruction” processing
- 6641 • Detector Control – responsible for the con-
 6642 trol and monitoring of environmental con-
 6643 ditions of the detector systems
- 6644 • Run Control – which ties together all
 6645 the other components, and is responsible
 6646 for sequencing their operations, interlock-
 6647 ing them as appropriate, and providing a
 6648 graphical user interface for operator control

6649 Each of these components, as well as a selection
 6650 of the common tools which tie them together are
 6651 described below.

6652 The entire system is coded primarily in the
 6653 C++ language, with some use of Java for graph-
 6654 ical user interfaces. Object-oriented analysis and
 6655 design techniques have been used throughout.
 6656 This has been an important factor in the success
 6657 of the project, having produced benefits in devel-
 6658 opment speed, maintainability, and extensibility.

6659 14.1.3. Hardware infrastructure

6660 The hardware infrastructure for the online sys-
 6661 tem is shown schematically in Figure 84.

6662 The data from the front-end electronics (FEE)
 6663 of the various detector systems are routed via op-
 6664 tical fiber links to a set of 157 custom VME *Read-*
 6665 *out Modules* (ROMs). These ROMs are grouped
 6666 by detector system and contained within 23 crates
 6667 controlled by the ODF software described be-
 6668 low. One ROM in each crate aggregates the data
 6669 and forwards the result for event building into
 6670 a farm of commercial Unix workstations [1], 32
 6671 of which are used during normal operation. The
 6672 crates and farm machines communicate via full-
 6673 duplex 100 Mbps Ethernet, linked by a network
 6674 switch—the *event builder switch* [2]. The ROMs
 6675 are supported by a *boot server* providing core and
 6676 system-specific code and configuration informa-
 6677 tion [3].

6678 The farm machines host the OEP and Level 3
 6679 trigger software. The events accepted by the trig-
 6680 ger are logged via TCP/IP to a *logging server* [3]
 6681 and written to a disk buffer for later reconstruc-
 6682 tion and archival storage. Various data quality
 6683 monitoring processes run on farm machines not
 6684 used for data acquisition.

6685 Several additional file servers hold the online
 6686 databases and production software releases. A
 6687 further set of *application servers* host the central
 6688 functions of the various online subsystems. Op-
 6689 erator displays are supported by a group of ten
 6690 *console servers* [4].

6691 An additional set of fifteen VME crates, each
 6692 with an embedded processor, contain the data ac-
 6693 quisition hardware for the detector control sub-
 6694 system.

6695 These, the online farm, and all the application
 6696 and console servers are connected via a switched
 6697 100 Mbps Ethernet network distinct from that
 6698 used for event building, with 1 Gbps fiber Ether-

6699 net used for the file servers and inter-switch links.

6700 14.1.4. User interaction

6701 Operator control of the online system is
6702 achieved primarily through a custom Motif
6703 graphical user interface (GUI) for run control and
6704 an extensive hierarchy of displays for detector
6705 control, including control panels, strip charts and
6706 an alarm handler. An electronic logbook is made
6707 available through a Web browser interface. These
6708 and other GUIs are organized across seventeen
6709 displays for the use of the experiment's opera-
6710 tors. This operator environment provides for ba-
6711 sic control of data acquisition, the overall state of
6712 the detector, and certain calibration tasks.

6713 Each detector system has developed a set of
6714 specialized calibration and diagnostic applica-
6715 tions using the tools provided in the online sys-
6716 tem. A subset of these calibrations has been spec-
6717 ified to be run once per day, during a ten minute
6718 scheduled beam-off period. The run control logic,
6719 combined with the capability for creating parti-
6720 tions, allows all detector systems' calibrations to
6721 be run in parallel and provides the operator with
6722 basic feedback on the success or failure of each.

6723 14.2. Online Dataflow

6724 *Online Dataflow* (ODF) handles data acqui-
6725 sition and processing from the detector systems'
6726 FEE through the delivery of complete events in
6727 the online farm [5]. The ODF subsystem receives
6728 the Level 1 trigger outputs, filters and distributes
6729 them to the FEE, reads back the resulting data
6730 and hierarchically assembles it into events. It
6731 provides interfaces for control of data acqui-
6732 sition, processing and calibration of detector sys-
6733 tem data, and FEE configuration. Multiple inde-
6734 pendent *partitions* of the detector may be oper-
6735 ated simultaneously.

6736 Event data acquisition proceeds from a trig-
6737 ger decision formed in the Fast Control and Tim-
6738 ing System (FCTS) hardware [6], a part of ODF,
6739 based on inputs from the Level 1 trigger. Trigger
6740 decisions are distributed, in the full detector con-
6741 figuration, to the 133 ROMs connected via optical
6742 fibers to the detector system FEE. These ROMs
6743 read and process the data from the FEE. One to
6744 ten such ROMs from a single detector system are

6745 located in each of the 23 data acquisition VME
6746 crates. ODF builds complete events from them,
6747 first collecting the data in each crate into an ad-
6748 ditional dedicated ROM, and then collecting the
6749 data from the 23 of these, across the event builder
6750 network switch, into the online farm Unix work-
6751 stations.

6752 The operation of the system is controlled by
6753 ODF software running on one of the application
6754 servers, under the direction of run control. A sin-
6755 gle ROM in the VME crate containing the central
6756 FCTS hardware supports the software interface
6757 to ODF. The distribution of ROMs by detector
6758 system is shown in Table 20. The numbers of
6759 ROMs connected directly to the detector FEE
6760 and of those used for event building are shown
6761 separately.

Table 20
Online Dataflow Hardware Components

Detector System	VME Crates	Readout Modules
SVT	5	14+5
DCH	2	4+2
DRC	2	6+2
EMC	10	100+10
IFR	1	4+1
EMT	1	1+1
DCT	1	3+1
GLT	1	1+1
FCTS	1	1
TOTAL	24	157

6762 All of the ROM CPUs boot via NFS over the
6763 event building network from the boot server de-
6764 scribed above. The entire system takes about
6765 40 seconds to load and boot 1.5 MB of core ODF
6766 code and, typically, 4 MB of detector-specific
6767 code.

6768 The ODF software allows all the components
6769 of this heterogeneous system to be represented as
6770 entities in a uniform object-oriented application
6771 framework. The components are organized into
6772 five *levels* which map closely onto the system's
6773 physical structure.

6774 For each component at each level, its behavior
6775 is abstracted as a finite state machine. The com-

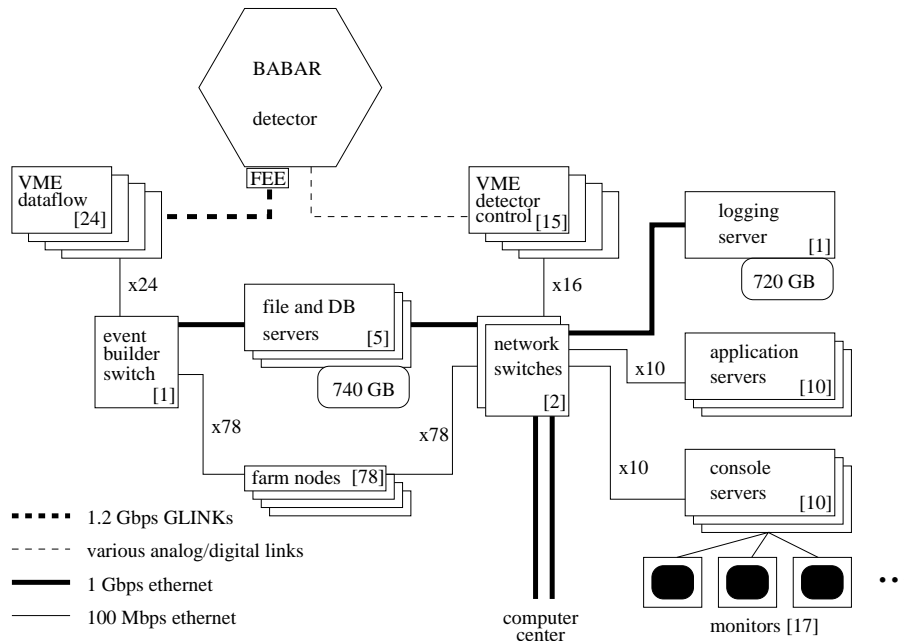


Figure 84. Physical infrastructure of the *BABAR* online system

6776 plete set of these machines is kept coherent by 6798
 6777 passing messages and data regarding state transi- 6799
 6778 tions along the chain of levels. The basic flow 6800
 6779 of control and data is shown in Figure 85. The 6801
 6780 mapping of levels to components is as follows: 6802

6781 *Control* – the Unix-based process controlling 6803
 6782 the operation of each partition and the source 6804
 6783 of all state transitions except for L1 Accept. It 6805
 6784 transmits state transition messages over the 6806
 6785 network to the source level, waiting for acknowle- 6807
 6786 dgment of their successful processing by all levels. 6808

6787 *Source* – the FCTS hardware and the soft- 6809
 6788 ware running in the ROM located in the FCTS 6810
 6789 VME crate. For each partition in existence, its 6811
 6790 source level receives control level transitions and 6812
 6791 Level 1 trigger outputs and distributes them via 6813
 6792 the FCTS hardware to all ROMs in the VME 6814
 6793 crates that are included in the partition. Level 1 6815
 6794 triggers are modeled in the subsystem as an addi- 6816
 6795 tional, idempotent state transition, *L1 Accept*, 6817
 6796 and are treated uniformly with the others wher- 6818
 6797 ever possible. 6819

Segment – the ROMs connected to the detec-
 tor FEE, with their ODF and detector system-
 specific software. Each segment level ROM re-
 ceives state transition messages from the source
 level and runs appropriate core and detector
 system-specific tasks in response. These tasks in-
 clude the acquisition of raw data from the FEE
 in response to L1 Accepts, and *feature extraction*
 — taking this data, eliminating uninteresting hits
 and applying calibration corrections, and return-
 ing results in a reduced form. Output data result-
 ing from this processing is attached to the tran-
 sition messages, which are then forwarded over
 the VME backplane to the fragment level ROM
 in each crate.

Fragment – the per-crate event builder ROMs
 and software. The single fragment level ROM
 in each crate aggregates the messages from the
 crate’s segment level ROMs — the first stage of
 event building — and forwards the combined mes-
 sage to one of the event level Unix nodes.

Event – the processes on the online farm nodes

6820 receiving complete events and handing them over
6821 to OEP for filtering and logging. The ODF event
6822 level code aggregates messages, with their at-
6823 tached data, from all the crates in a partition
6824 – the second and final stage of event building.
6825 The resulting data may be further processed by
6826 user code in the event level, but is normally
6827 just passed on to OEP. The control level is no-
6828 tified of the completion of processing of all tran-
6829 sitions other than L1 Accept. Both the fragment
6830 and event level event builders use a data-driven
6831 “push” model, with a back pressure mechanism
6832 to signal when they are unable to accept more
6833 data.

6834 Test stands of varying complexity are sup-
6835 ported. The simplest possible consists of a single
6836 Unix machine which runs both control and event
6837 level code, with two FCTS modules and a single
6838 ROM, running source, segment, and fragment
6839 level code, in one VME crate. Subsystem config-
6840 uration is detected at run-time, so the same code
6841 that runs in the full subsystem can also run in
6842 test stand systems.

6843 14.2.1. Control and Source Levels

6844 The control level sends state transition mes-
6845 sages for a partition over the network, using the
6846 UDP datagram protocol [10], to the source level
6847 in the single ROM inside the FCTS crate. In the
6848 source level, the transition message is sent over
6849 VME to an FCTS module which forwards it as a
6850 104-bit 59.5 MHz serial word to all VME crates
6851 in the relevant partition. This serial word con-
6852 tains a 56-bit event time stamp (counting at 59.5
6853 MHz), a 32-bit transition-specific word and ad-
6854 ditional control bits. L1 Accept transitions and
6855 calibration sequences originate in the source level,
6856 but then the same mechanism is used to transmit
6857 them through the system.

6858 The FCTS hardware receives the 24 Level 1
6859 trigger output lines and eight additional exter-
6860 nal trigger lines. The FCTS crate is a 9U VME
6861 crate, with a custom P3 backplane on which all
6862 the trigger lines are bussed. For each partition,
6863 an FCTS module receives these lines. It is config-
6864 urable with a bit mask specifying the trigger lines
6865 enabled for its partition, and an optional prescale
6866 factor for each line. A trigger decision is formed

6867 for the partition by taking the logical OR of the
6868 enabled prescaled lines. Twelve of these modules
6869 are installed in the full system, thus setting its
6870 maximum number of partitions.

6871 The FCTS crate receives two timing signals
6872 from the accelerator: a 476 MHz clock tied
6873 to the RF bucket structure of PEP-II and a
6874 136 kHz fiducial that counts at its revolution fre-
6875 quency. The former is divided by eight to create
6876 a 59.5 MHz system clock. The fiducial is used to
6877 start timing counters and to check that the clocks
6878 have no problems.

6879 There are two types of deadtime in the ODF
6880 subsystem. The first arises due to the minimum
6881 spacing of 2.7 μ s required between L1 Accept
6882 transitions. This restriction simplified the logic
6883 design of the FEE readout, because each datum
6884 in the silicon tracker and drift chamber is thus
6885 associated with only one L1 Accept. The FCTS
6886 hardware enforces this by ensuring that all transi-
6887 tions have at least the minimum separation. The
6888 command spacing introduces an irreducible, yet
6889 minimal deadtime: 0.54% at 2 kHz.

6890 The second type of deadtime arises when all
6891 FEE buffers are full and thus unable to accept
6892 another event. In a time required to be less than
6893 the inter-command spacing, each VME crate in
6894 a partition may send back a FULL signal indicat-
6895 ing that it is no longer able to process further
6896 L1 Accept transitions. The FCTS hardware de-
6897 tects these signals and disables triggering until
6898 the FEE are once again prepared to accept data.

6899 An actual L1 Accept signal is only generated
6900 from a partition’s trigger decision when neither
6901 form of deadtime is asserted.

6902 14.2.2. Segment and Fragment Levels

6903 The segment and fragment levels reside in the
6904 23 detector system VME crates. These are stan-
6905 dard 9U crates with a custom P3 backplane.

6906 The 104 bit serial transition messages that
6907 leave the source level are received by a FCTS
6908 module in each VME crate in a partition. This
6909 module in turn forwards these messages to the
6910 ROMs in the crate over the custom backplane,
6911 along with the 59.5 MHz system clock.

6912 A ROM consists of four components (Fig-
6913 ure 86): a commercial single-board computer

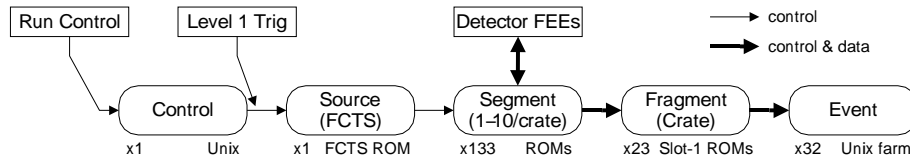


Figure 85. Schematic of the ODF *levels*, their mapping onto physical components, and the flow of control and data between them.

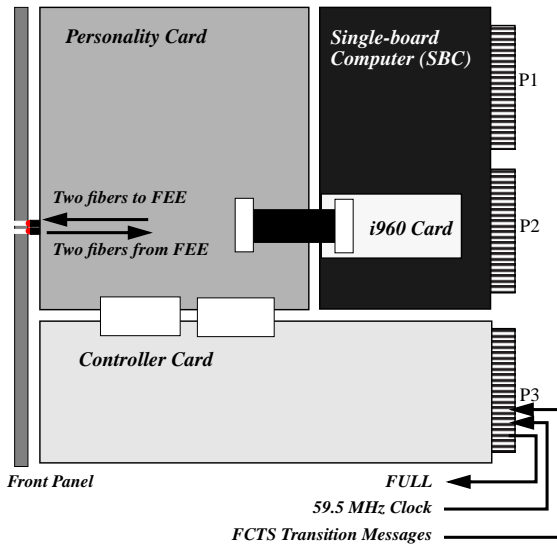


Figure 86. A ROM with a triggered personality card (TPC)

6914 (SBC) [7] and three custom boards: a *controller*
 6915 *card* for receiving FCTS commands and supporting
 6916 FEE reads and writes; a *personality card* that
 6917 transmits commands to and receives data from
 6918 the FEE; and a PCI mezzanine card with an Intel
 6919 i960 I/O processor. The SBCs run the Vx-
 6920 Works [9] operating system with custom code
 6921 written in C++ and assembly language.

6922 There are two styles of personality cards in the
 6923 system: triggered (*TPC*) and untriggered (*UPC*).
 6924 *UPCs* are used only in the EMC system. These

6925 accept data continuously from the FEE into a
 6926 buffer pipeline, at a rate of 3.7 MHz. From these
 6927 samples EMC trigger information is derived and
 6928 sent over a dedicated serial link to the trigger
 6929 hardware, providing it with a continuous data
 6930 stream. An L1 Accept causes up to 256 sam-
 6931 ples of the raw data stream to be saved to an
 6932 intermediate memory store on the UPC.

6933 A TPC (used in all other systems) reads out
 6934 FEE data only when an L1 Accept is received,
 6935 again saving it into an intermediate memory
 6936 store. Each detector reads out data in a window
 6937 of time around the trigger signal, large enough to
 6938 allow for trigger jitter (see section [ref?] above)
 6939 and detector time resolution. For instance, this
 6940 window is about 500 ns wide for the silicon vertex
 6941 tracker. The actual event time within the window
 6942 is determined approximately in the Level 3 trig-
 6943 ger software in OEP and then refined off-line in
 6944 the course of full event reconstruction.

6945 FEE commands (such as for initiating event
 6946 reading) are sent and data received by the per-
 6947 sonality cards over unidirectional 1.2 Gbps serial
 6948 optical fiber links [8]. All systems' FEE provide
 6949 zero suppression in hardware except in the EMC
 6950 and IFR. Data are transferred from the personal-
 6951 ity card to SBC memory using the i960 as a direct
 6952 memory access (DMA) engine. This DMA runs
 6953 at nearly the ideal 133 MB/s rate of the PCI bus.

6954 The FEE for various systems are able to buffer
 6955 data for three to five L1 Accept transitions. The
 6956 ROM keeps track of the buffer occupancy and
 6957 sends, when necessary, a *FULL* signal (within the
 6958 required 2.7 μ s interval) back to the FCTS to sup-
 6959 press further triggers. The *FULL* condition is re-

6960 moved when event reads by the ROM free suffi- 6993
 6961 cient buffer space. This mechanism handles back 6994
 6962 pressure from any stage of the data acquisition 6995
 6963 through to logging by OEP; when downstream 6996
 6964 processes back up for any reason, back pressure is 6997
 6965 applied all the way up the chain until FEE buffers 6998
 6966 are filled and the assertion of FULL throttles the 6999
 6967 L1 Accept rate. 7000

6968 The ODF application framework provides uni- 7001
 6969 form software entry points for the insertion of user 7002
 6970 code at each level of the system. This capability 7003
 6971 is used primarily at the segment level, for FEE 7004
 6972 configuration and feature extraction. Table 21 7005
 6973 shows detector output sizes, bytes per hit, and 7006
 6974 overhead (e.g. addressing). 7007

Table 21
 Typical Event Sizes from Detector Systems

Detector	Hit Size	Total Size	Overhead
SVT	2 bytes	4.9 kB	0.4 kB
DCH	10 bytes	4.8 kB	0.2 kB
DRC	4 bytes	3.1 kB	0.3 kB
EMC	4 bytes	9.1 kB	3.0 kB
IFR	??	1.2 kB	0.2 kB
EMT	—	1.2 kB	<0.1 kB
DCT	—	2.7 kB	0.1 kB
GLT	—	0.9 kB	<0.1 kB
TOTAL		27.9 kB	4.2 kB

6975 Data from the segment level ROMs in a crate 7021
 6976 are gathered by the fragment level ROM using 7022
 6977 a *chained* sequence of DMA operations. The 7023
 6978 maximum throughput of the fragment level event 7024
 6979 builder is observed to be about 31 Mbps. 7025

6980 In calibrations, ODF may be operated in a 7026
 6981 mode in which L1 Accept data are not trans- 7027
 6982 ferred out of the segment level ROMs. This al- 7028
 6983 lows calibration data accumulation to occur at 7029
 6984 high rates inside the ROMs, not limited by the 7030
 6985 throughput of the event builders or any down- 7031
 6986 stream consumers. Completed calibration results 7032
 6987 are computed, read out of the ROMs, and written 7033
 6988 to a database on a non-L1 Accept state transition 7034
 6989 following the accumulation. 7035

6990 14.2.3. Event Level

6991 For each L1 Accept transition passing through 7036
 6992 the ODF subsystem, all fragment ROM data are 7037

7008 sent to one of the Unix farm machines. The des- 7009
 7009 tination is chosen by a deterministic calculation 7010
 7010 based on the L1 Accept's 56-bit time stamp, avail- 7011
 7011 able from the FCTS in each ROM. This tech- 7012
 7012 nique has been demonstrated to produce a uni- 7013
 7013 form quasi-random distribution and to introduce 7014
 7014 no detectable inefficiency in processing. Events 7015
 7015 sent to a farm machine still busy with a previous 7016
 7016 event are held in a buffer to await processing. 7017

7018 All fragment data for an event are sent over the 7018
 7019 switched 100 Mbps Ethernet event building net- 7019
 7020 work to the selected farm machine. The connec- 7020
 7021 tionless User Datagram Protocol (UDP/IP) [10] 7021
 7022 was chosen as the data transport protocol [11], 7022
 7023 allowing a flow control mechanism to be tailored 7023
 7024 specifically to this application. Dropped pack- 7024
 7025 ets are minimized by the network's purely point- 7025
 7026 to-point, full duplex switched architecture, and 7026
 7027 by careful tuning of the buffering in the network 7027
 7028 switch and other parameters. In the rare in- 7028
 7029 stance when a packet is lost this is detected by the 7029
 7030 event builder and the resulting incomplete event 7030
 7031 flagged. 7031

7032 The event level provides the standard software 7032
 7033 entry points for user code. In normal operation, 7033
 7034 these are used only to transfer events via shared 7034
 7035 memory to the OEP subsystem for Level 3 trig- 7035
 7036 gering, monitoring, and logging. 7036

7021 14.2.4. System Monitoring

7022 It is important that the clocks of the FEE stay 7022
 7023 synchronized with the rest of the system. Each 7023
 7024 FEE module maintains a time counter which is 7024
 7025 compared to the time stamp of each L1 Accept in 7025
 7026 order to ensure that the system remains synchro- 7026
 7027 nized. If it becomes unsynchronized, a special 7027
 7028 *synch* command can be sent through the FCTS, 7028
 7029 causing all systems to reset their clocks. 7029

7030 To ensure that the data from the correct event 7030
 7031 is retrieved from the FEE, a five-bit number is 7031
 7032 incremented and sent down from the FCTS to 7032
 7033 the FEE with each L1 Accept. These bits are 7033
 7034 stored in the FEE along with the data and are 7034
 7035 compared on read-back. If they disagree, a spe- 7035
 7036 cial *clear-readout* command is sent which resyn- 7036
 7037 chronizes ROM buffer pointers with FEE buffer 7037
 7038 pointers. 7038

7039 All transitions, including L1 Accept, are logged 7039

in a 4 kB deep by 20 byte wide FIFO as they pass through the FCTS crate. The transition type, the event time stamp, a bit list of the trigger lines contributing to the decision, and the current FULL bit list from all VME crates are recorded in this FIFO. There are also scalers which record delivered and accepted luminosity, deadtime due to the 2.7 μ s minimum inter-command spacing, deadtime caused by VME crates being FULL and triggers on each line. These FIFOs and scalers are read out over VME by the FCTS ROM, which then transmits the data to monitoring programs that calculate quantities such as luminosity, deadtime and trigger rates. The UDP *multicast* protocol [12] is used to allow efficient simultaneous transmission of data to multiple clients.

To provide diagnostics, a system which multicasts additional performance information on demand from each CPU, typically at 1 Hz, is used. This information is currently received by a single client on one of the Unix application servers and archived. It can be retrieved subsequently to investigate any unusual behaviour observed in the system.

14.3. Online Event Processing

The online event processing (OEP) subsystem provides a framework for the processing of complete events delivered from the ODF event builder [13]. The Level 3 (software) trigger described in Section [trg:13] above operates in this framework, along with event-based data quality monitoring and the final stages of online calibrations.

The OEP subsystem serves as an adapter between the ODF event builder interface and the application framework originally developed for the off-line computing system. Raw data delivered from the ODF subsystem are put into an object-oriented form and made available through the standard event data analysis interface.

The use of this technique permitted the Level 3 trigger and most of the data quality monitoring software to be written and debugged within the off-line environment. This software is decomposed into small, reusable units — *modules*, plugable software components in the framework — many of which are shared among multiple appli-

cations.

The OEP interfaces allow user applications to append new data blocks to the original raw data from ODF. The results of Level 3 event analysis are stored in this manner so that the trigger decision and the tracks and calorimeter clusters on which it is based may be used in later processing, such as reconstruction and trigger performance studies.

In order to provide sufficient CPU capacity, with headroom, the Level 3 trigger task within OEP is typically run on 32 of the nodes in the online farm described above.

Histograms and other monitoring data are accumulated across the farm. In order to be able to monitor the full resulting statistics, a “distributed histogramming package” (DHP) [14] was developed which provides to networked clients a single view of histograms and time history data summed across all nodes, communicating via CORBA-based protocols [15,16].

In addition to the primary triggering and monitoring functions carried out on the 32 nodes, OEP provides a “trickle stream” protocol that allows networked clients to subscribe to a sampling of the event data. This scheme provides support for event displays and additional detailed data quality monitoring (“Fast Monitoring”). Figure 87 shows the basic flow of data in the OEP subsystem.

A system for automated comparisons of monitoring data against defined references was developed. Statistical comparisons of live histograms, or the results of fits to them, may be performed at configurable time intervals to reference histograms, analytic spectra, or specified nominal values of fit parameters.

Comparison failures, tagged with configurable severity levels based on the confidence levels of the comparisons, are displayed to operators and logged in the common occurrence database, described below.

The Java Analysis Studio package [17] previously developed at SLAC has been enhanced with the ability to serve as a DHP client, and it is used for operator viewing of monitoring data accumulated in OEP. This was implemented by devising a Java “middleware server” which adapts the DHP

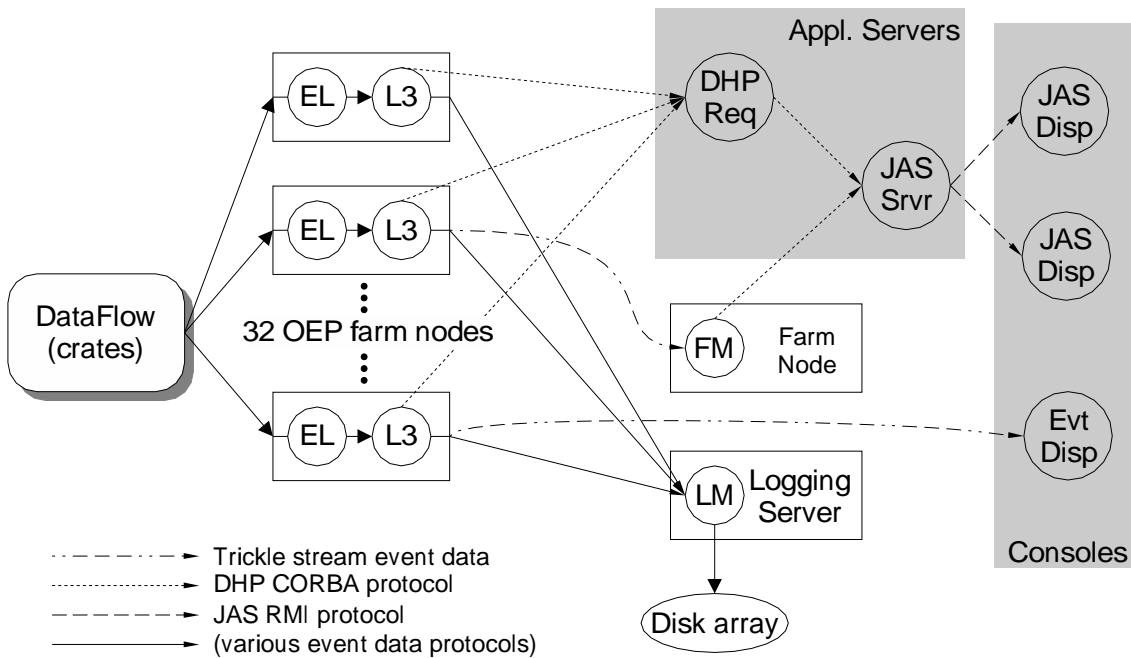


Figure 87. Flow of data in the OEP subsystem: ODF event level (EL) and Level 3 trigger processes on each OEP node; the Logging Manager (LM) on the logging server; the DHP “requestor” process that combines histograms from all 32 Level 3 processes; one instance of a Fast Monitoring (FM) process with DHP histograms; the Java server that makes DHP histograms available to JAS clients; two such clients, and one event display for the Level 3 trigger. OEP-specific data transport protocols are identified.

7135 protocol to the native JAS data protocol.

7136 A dedicated operator console supports the data
7137 quality monitoring system, providing for its control
7138 and for the display of the histograms from
7139 Fast Monitoring and the Level 3 trigger processes,
7140 using JAS, along with any error conditions detected
7141 by the automatic histogram analysis facility.
7142

7143 14.4. Data logging

7144 Events selected by the Level 3 trigger algo-
7145 rithms in OEP are retained for subsequent full
7146 reconstruction. The events are sent from the 32
7147 OEP nodes via TCP/IP to a single multithreaded
7148 process, the *Logging Manager* (LM), running on
7149 the logging server described above. The LM
7150 writes them to the server’s RAID arrays in a format
7151 specific to OEP. Data from all 32 nodes are

7152 combined into a single file for each data-taking
7153 *run* (typically two to three hours of data acquisition,
7154 resulting in files of about 15–20 GB in size).

7155 Completed files are copied to the SLAC HPSS
7156 (High Performance Storage System) [18] system
7157 for archiving to tape. These files are retrieved
7158 from HPSS for reconstruction, which is typically
7159 completed within less than eight hours of data
7160 acquisition. The data files are also retrievable
7161 for other tasks such as detector system hardware
7162 diagnostics and offline tests of the Level 3 trigger
7163 algorithms.

7164 14.5. Detector Control

7165 14.5.1. Design Principles

7166 The Experimental Physics and Industrial Control
7167 System, EPICS [19], was selected to provide the
7168 “engineering layer” for the online detector

control (ODC) subsystem: the direct connection to the electrical signals of the power supplies and other hardware, with sufficient monitoring and control to allow commissioning, fault diagnosis and testing. A summary of monitoring and control points is presented in Table 22.

Table 22
Detector Control monitor points *this is a placeholder table awaiting data from Vera*

Detector System	Monitor Points	Control Points
SVT	?	?
DCH	?	?
DRC	?	?
EMC	?	?
IFR	?	?
PEPII	?	?
General	?	?
TOTAL	?	?

Beyond the writing of custom drivers, only minor additions or changes were required to EPICS as distributed. EPICS and the additional software specializing it for *BABAR* are written in the C language.

Detector-wide standard hardware was adopted to ease development and maintenance. The standard ODC crate is a 6U VME chassis containing a single board computer [20] serving as an EPICS input/output controller (IOC). Fifteen such crates are used in the experiment. EPICS is fully distributed: each IOC supplies its own naming service, notify-by-exception semantics, and processing. The IOCs boot from a dedicated server.

Analog data are either digitized by modules within the crates or, more commonly, on digitizer boards located directly on the detector. In the latter case, the CANbus standard [21] is used for the transport of signals to and from the detector. A custom “general monitoring board” (GMB) [22] was developed to interface CANbus to the on-detector electronics. The GMB contains a microcontroller, an ADC, multiplexors and operational amplifiers. It can digitize up to 32 sig-

nals.

14.5.2. User interface

The operator view of this part of the control system is via screens controlled by the EPICS display manager, DM.

Dedicated control and display panels were developed using DM for each of the detector subsystems, using common “color rules” to show the status of devices, aggregated up the hierarchy of detector system components. A top-level panel for ODC summarizes all subsystems’ status and provides access to their specialized panels.

The EPICS alarm handler (ALH) with some *BABAR*-specific modifications is used to provide operators with audible and color-coded alarms and warnings in a hierarchical view of all the subsystems and components. Conditions directly relevant to personnel or detector safety are further enforced by hardware interlocks, the states of which are themselves reflected in a set of uniform EPICS displays and in the ALH, and an alarm annunciator.

14.5.3. Interfaces to other *BABAR* software

A custom C++ layer above EPICS consisting of *Component Proxies* and *Archivers* provides for device-oriented state management and archival data collection. This is ODC’s interface to the rest of the online system.

The 27 component proxies (CPs), running on a Unix application server, each define a logical component representing some aspect of a detector system or the experiment’s central support systems, aggregated from the 10^5 individual EPICS channels.

The CPs present a simple finite state machine model as their interface to Run Control. The most important actions available are *Configure*, on which the CP accesses the configuration database described below, retrieving set points for its component’s channels, and *Begin Run*, which puts the CP into the *Running* state, in which setpoint changes are prohibited and readbacks are required to match settings. While in the *Running* state, the CP maintains a *Runnable* flag which reflects that requirement and allows Run Control to ensure that data acquisition is per-

formed only under satisfactory conditions. When the flag is negated, indicating that readback values are out of tolerance, Run Control will automatically pause data-taking.

The CP's other principal function is to provide an interface for the rest of the online system to the data collected by ODC on the state of the detector hardware and its environment — dubbed “ambient data.”

The recording of this data so that it may be analyzed and correlated with event data is essential to the full understanding of the detector. It is the task of the *Archiver* processes, each paired with a CP, to collect the ambient data, aggregate them and write out time histories approximately every hour to the Ambient Database described below. The data are recorded associated with times in order that they may be correlated with the time stamps of the event data. Data from the Archivers' current buffers or from the database may be viewed with a custom graphical browser.

Most ambient data sources generally vary only within their own noise limits, so unnecessary data volume is avoided by limiting storage of data to movements outside a dead-band (set separately for each channel) or across an alarm threshold.

14.5.4. Integration with the accelerator

Close integration between the *BABAR* detector and the PEP-II accelerator is essential to maintain the health of the detector components and the efficiency of data collection. Data from the accelerator control system are transported via EPICS channel access to *BABAR* for display and storage, managed by a dedicated CP. In turn, background signals from the detector are made available to PEP-II to aid in injection and tuning, minimizing backgrounds and optimizing integrated luminosity. An important component of this communication is the “injection request” handshake. When the PEP-II operator requests a significant change in the beam conditions, such as injection or dumping of the beams, the request can only proceed following confirmation from *BABAR*. This complements the safety interlocks that *BABAR* controls to enforce protection from radiation damage.

14.5.5. Operational experience

The ODC subsystem has been operational since the initial cosmic-ray commissioning of the detector and the beginning of data-taking with colliding beams. The core EPICS infrastructure has proven to be very robust. The large size of the subsystem, with its 15 IOCs and 10^5 data channels, produces heavy but manageable traffic on the experiment's network.

[Need some data volume and rate numbers from ODC folks here. Walt Innes is looking to this but tentatively reported a value of 4 MB/day]

14.6. Run Control

The run control subsystem is implemented as an application of SMI++, a toolkit for designing distributed control systems [23]. Using this software, the *BABAR* experiment is modeled as a collection of objects behaving as finite state machines. These objects represent both real entities, such as the ODF subsystem or the drift chamber high voltage controller, and abstract subsystems such as the “calibrator,” a supervisor for the coordination of online components for calibration runs. The behavior of the objects are described in a specialized language (SML) which is interpreted by a generic logic engine to implement the control system.

The SML descriptions of the objects which make up the experiment simply specify their own states and transitions as well as the connections between the states of different objects. Objects perform actions on state transitions, which may include explicitly commanding transitions in other objects; objects may also be programmed to monitor and automatically respond to changes of state in other objects. Such connections express the control hierarchy of the experiment. Anticipated error conditions in components of the online system are reflected in their state models, allowing many errors to be handled automatically by the system. To reduce complexity, logically related objects are grouped together into a hierarchy of cooperating domains.

The system is highly automated; user input is generally required only to initialize the system, start and stop runs, and handle unusual er-

7340 rors. The user communicates with Run Control
7341 via a configurable Motif-based GUI included in
7342 SMI++.

7343 The states and behavior of Run Control ob-
7344 jects representing external systems are provided
7345 by a special class of intermediate software pro-
7346 cesses called *proxies*. A proxy monitors its sys-
7347 tem, provides an abstraction of it to Run Control,
7348 and receives state transition commands. These
7349 commands are interpreted and applied to the un-
7350 derlying hardware or software components, im-
7351 plementing the transitions' actions. The control
7352 level of an ODF partition is an example of such
7353 a proxy.

7354 Communication between the various proxies
7355 and the Run Control engines is provided by
7356 DIM [24], a fault tolerant “publish and subscribe”
7357 communications package based on TCP/IP sock-
7358 ets, allowing Run Control to be distributed trans-
7359 parently over a network.

7360 Essential to the operation of the online system
7361 is the notion of the *Runnable* status of its vari-
7362 ous Detector Control and data acquisition com-
7363 ponents, indicating that they are in a state suit-
7364 able for production-quality data-taking. The Run
7365 Control logic interlocks data-taking to the logical
7366 AND of all components' *Runnable* status. While
7367 this condition is not satisfied, data-taking may
7368 not start and any existing run will be paused with
7369 an alert sent to the operator.

7370 14.7. Common software infrastructure

7371 14.7.1. Databases

7372 Five major databases are used by the online
7373 system:

7374 1. *Configuration Database*: This database, im-
7375 plemented using the commercial object-oriented
7376 database management system Objectivity [25],
7377 allows the creation of hierarchical associations of
7378 system-specific configuration data with a single
7379 numeric *configuration key*. This key is distributed
7380 to all online components, which can then use it
7381 to retrieve from the database all the configuration
7382 information they require. Convenient mnemonics
7383 are associated with the keys for currently rele-
7384 vant configurations, and may be selected for use
7385 via the Run Control GUI [26].

7386 2. and 3. *Ambient and Conditions Databases*:

7387 These databases, also implemented using Objec-
7388 tivity, are based on the notion of time histories
7389 of various data items associated with the exper-
7390 iment. The history for each item is divided into
7391 intervals over which a specific value of the item is
7392 valid. The Ambient Database is used principally
7393 by the Detector Control subsystem to record de-
7394 tector parameters and environmental data at the
7395 time they are measured [26].

7396 The Conditions Database is used to record cali-
7397 bration constants and alignments, a digested sub-
7398 set of the Ambient information, and the configu-
7399 ration keys in force during data taking runs. It
7400 has the additional feature, compared to the Am-
7401 bient Database, that the data for a given time
7402 interval may be updated as they are refined in
7403 the course of improved understanding of the ap-
7404 paratus [27].

7405 The Configuration and Conditions Databases
7406 are exported for reconstruction and physics anal-
7407 ysis.

7408 4. *Occurrence (Error) Log*: Informational and
7409 error messages generated in the online system are
7410 routed through the CMLOG system [28] to a cen-
7411 tral database, from which they are available for
7412 operators' real-time viewing or historical brows-
7413 ing, using a graphical tool, as well as for subscrip-
7414 tion by online components which may require no-
7415 tification of certain occurrences.

7416 5. *Electronic Logbook*: An Oracle-based [29]
7417 logbook is used to maintain the history of the
7418 experiment's data-taking, organized by runs nor-
7419 mally of approximately two hours' duration. It
7420 contains information on beam parameters — in-
7421 stantaneous and integrated luminosity, currents,
7422 and energies — as well as records of data acqui-
7423 sition parameters such as trigger rates, data vol-
7424 umes, and deadtimes, and the detector configu-
7425 ration used for a run. The logbook also contains
7426 text comments and graphics added by the opera-
7427 tions staff.

7428 A number of other databases are used in the
7429 online system for various tasks such as indexing
7430 logged data files, the repair history of online hard-
7431 ware and spares, and tracking software problem
7432 reports.

14.7.2. Software Release Control and Configuration Management

All of the online software is maintained in the common *BABAR* code repository, based on the freely available Concurrent Versions System software, CVS [30].

The online's Unix and VxWorks applications are built and maintained with an extension of the standard *BABAR* software release tools [31]. At the start of every data-taking run, the identities of the current production software release and any installed patches are recorded; thus it is possible at a later date to reconstruct the versions of online software used to acquire data.

14.8. Summary

The online system has exceeded its data acquisition performance goals. It is capable of acquiring colliding beam events, with an average size of 28 kB, at a $\mathcal{O}(2500\text{ Hz})$ Level 1 trigger rate and reducing this rate in Level 3 to the required $\mathcal{O}(120\text{ Hz})$ limit. This provides comfortable margins, for under normal beam conditions the Level 1 trigger rate is $\mathcal{O}(800\text{--}1000\text{ Hz})$.

The system is capable of logging data from Level 3 at much higher rates when required for diagnostics; the nominal 120 Hz figure represents a compromise between data volume and its consequential load on downstream processing and archival storage, and trigger efficiency for low multiplicity final states.

During normal data-taking the online system routinely achieves an efficiency of over 98%, taking both data acquisition livetime and the system's overall reliability into account.

14.8.1. Upgrade Path

There are several hardware options open for scaling the existing ODF subsystem. Currently most ROMs receive more than one fiber from the FEE. These fibers could be distributed over more ROMs to add processing power. There are also commercial upgrade paths for the ROMs' MVME2306 SBC boards available from Motorola. Crates can be split (up to a maximum total of 32) to create more VME event building bandwidth, as well as more fragment level CPU power and network bandwidth. Gigabit Ethernet

connections could also be installed to improve the network event builder's bandwidth.

Various software upgrade options are being investigated, including optimizing the VxWorks network drivers and grouping sets of events together in order to reduce the impact of per-event overhead.

Current background projections indicate that fragment level CPU, segment level memory bus bandwidth and network event building bandwidth are the most likely bottlenecks we will encounter in the future.

Increases in the Level 1 trigger rate or in the background occupancy and complexity of events are expected to necessitate providing additional capacity for OEP, principally for Level 3 triggering. The online farm machines could be replaced with faster models. More machines could also be used, at the expense of increases coherent loading on various servers and of additional management complexity.

No requirement for significant capacity upgrades to the data logging subsystem or to Detector Control is foreseen at this time.

REFERENCES

1. Sun Ultra 5, with single 333 MHz UltraSPARC-IIi CPUs and 512 MB of RAM, Sun Microsystems, Inc., Palo Alto, California, USA.
2. Cisco model 6500, Cisco Systems, Inc., San Jose, California, USA.
3. For the period of data taking covered by this writing, a single Sun Microsystems Ultra Enterprise 450, with four ? MHz CPUs, 2 GB of RAM, and 720 GB of RAID-3 disk, acted as the data logging server as well as the ODF boot server. Beginning in 2001 all its responsibilities other than data logging were moved to a new Sun Ultra 220R machine with dual 450 MHz UltraSPARC-II CPUs, 1 GB of RAM, and an additional 200 GB RAID array.
4. These file and database servers (presently five) are primarily additional Sun Ultra 220Rs, each with about 200 GB of RAID disk. The ten application servers are a mix of Sun Ultra 60s, with dual 360 MHz

- 7525 UltraSPARC-II CPUs and 1 GB of RAM, and 7572
 7526 Ultra 5s; the console servers are all Ultra 5s. 7573
- 7527 5. R. Claus et al., “Development of a Data 7574
 7528 Acquisition System for the BABAR CP Vio- 7575
 7529 lation Experiment”, *Proceedings of the 11th* 7576
 7530 *IEEE NPSS RealTime Conference*, 14-18 7577
 7531 June 1999, Santa Fe, New Mexico, USA. 7578
 7532 (<http://strider.lansce.lanl.gov/rt99/index11.html>)
 - 7533 6. P. Grosso, et al., “The BABAR Fast Con- 7580
 7534 trol System”, *Proceedings of the International* 7581
 7535 *Conference on Computing in High-Energy* 7582
 7536 *Physics, 1998*, 31 Aug-4 Sep 1998, Chicago, 7583
 7537 Illinois, USA. 7584
 - 7538 7. Motorola model MVME2306 boards, each 7585
 7539 with a 300 MHz PowerPC 604 CPU, 32 MB 7586
 7540 of RAM, 5 MB of non-volatile flash memory, 7587
 7541 two PCI mezzanine card slots (only one of 7588
 7542 which is currently used), a 100 Mbps Eth- 7589
 7543 ernet interface, and a Tundra Universe II 7590
 7544 VME interface, manufactured by the Mo- 7591
 7545 torola Computer Group division of Motorola 7592
 7546 Inc., Tempe, AZ 85282. 7593
 - 7547 8. These use the Hewlett-Packard GLINK proto- 7594
 7548 col. [need a more detailed reference here from 7595
 7549 Gunther, perhaps] 7596
 - 7550 9. The VxWorks RTOS and Tornado Develop- 7597
 7551 ment interface are products of Wind River 7598
 7552 Systems, Inc., Alameda, CA 94501-1153. 7599
 - 7553 10. J. Postel, “User Datagram Protocol”, RFC- 7600
 7554 0768, 28 Aug 1980. Internet documentation 7601
 7555 including all RFCs (Requests for Comment) 7602
 7556 are available online from the Internet Engi- 7603
 7557 neering Task Force, <http://www.ietf.org>. 7604
 - 7558 11. T. J. Pavel, et al., “Network Performance 7605
 7559 Testing for the BABAR Event Builder”, *Pro-* 7606
 7560 *ceedings of the CHEP 1998 Conference*. 7607
 - 7561 12. S. Deering, “Host Extensions for IP Multicas- 7608
 7562 ting”, RFC-1112, August 1989. 7609
 - 7563 13. G. P. Dubois-Felsmann, E. Chen, Yu. 7610
 7564 Kolomensky, *et al.*, *Flexible Processing* 7611
 7565 *Framework for Online Event Data and Soft-* 7612
 7566 *ware Triggering*, *IEEE Transactions on Nu-* 7613
 7567 *clear Science* 47, 353 (2000). 7614
 - 7568 14. DHP reference needed – Scott Metzler, CHEP 7615
 7569 conference or BABAR note..... 7616
 - 7570 15. CORBA (Common Object Request Broker 7617
 7571 Architecture) Standards, Object Manage- 7618
 7619 ment Group, <http://www.corba.org/>.
 16. ACE/TAO CORBA implementation, Dis-
 tributed Object Computing Group, Wash-
 ington University, St. Louis, Missouri, USA
 and University of California, Irvine, Cal-
 ifornia, USA, [http://www.cs.wustl.edu/
 ~schmidt/TAO.html](http://www.cs.wustl.edu/~schmidt/TAO.html).
 17. JAS reference
 18. High Performance Storage System
 (HPSS), International Business Ma-
 chines, Inc., Armonk, New York, USA,
[http://www4.clearlake.ibm.com/
 hpss/index.jsp](http://www4.clearlake.ibm.com/hpss/index.jsp).
 19. L. Dalesio *et al.*, “The Experimental Physics
 and Industrial Control System Architecture:
 past, present and future”, *Nuclear Instru-*
ments and Methods in Physics Research A,
 vol. 352, pp.179, 1994.
 20. The ODC IOCs are model MVME177 boards
 with MC68060 CPUs from Motorola Com-
 puter Group, *op. cit.*.
 21. ISO standards 11519, “Road vehicles — Low-
 speed serial data communication” (1994),
 and 11898, “Road vehicles — Interchange of
 digital information — Controller area net-
 work (CAN) for high-speed communication”
 (1993). See <http://www.iso.ch/>.
 22. T. Meyer and R. McKay, “The BABAR Gen-
 eral Monitoring Board”, *BABAR Note* 366,
 May 1998.
 23. B. Franek and C. Gaspar, “SMI++ Object
 Oriented Framework for Designing and Imple-
 menting Distributed Control Systems”, *IEEE*
Trans. Nucl. Sci. 45 (1998) 1946. SMI++ was
 adopted, with some upgrades, from a system
 used in the DELPHI experiment at CERN.
 24. C. Gaspar and M. Donszelman, “DIM - A
 Distributed Information Management System
 for the DELPHI experiment at CERN”, *Pro-*
ceedings of the IEEE Eight Conference REAL
TIME '93 on Computer Applications in Nu-
clear, Particle and Plasma Physics; Vancou-
 ver, Canada.
 25. A product of Objectivity Inc.,
 Mountain View, CA 94041;
<http://www.objectivity.com/>.
 26. G. Zioulas *et al.*, “Ambient and Configura-
 tion databases for the BABAR online system”,

- 7620 Proceedings of the Real Time 99 Conference, 7636 **15. Summary**
7621 June 14-18, 1999, Santa Fe, New Mexico.
- 7622 27. [reference to be supplied, perhaps from CHEP
7623 98].
- 7624 28. The products `cdev` and `CML0G` are soft-
7625 ware facilities produced by the Accelerator
7626 Controls group of the Thomas Jefferson
7627 National Accelerator Facility. Documenta-
7628 tion is available from their Web site,
7629 <http://www.cebaf.gov/>.
- 7630 29. A product of Oracle Corporation, Redwood
7631 Shores, CA USA. <http://www.oracle.com/>.
- 7632 30. The Concurrent Versions System is an open-
7633 source distributed version control system.
7634 <http://www.cvshome.org/>.
- 7635 31. Reference to Software Release Tools